

# AM/FM SIGNAL GENERATORS 2023 and 2024



# **Operating Manual**

**Document part no. 46892/225** 

Issue 9

18 May 1998

# AM/FM SIGNAL GENERATOR 2023 & 2024 9 kHz - 1.2 GHz 9 kHz - 2.4 GHz

#### Includes information on:

Option 1: No attenuator.
Option 2: DC operation.
Option 3: High power.

Option 4: High stability frequency standard.

Option 5: Rear panel connectors.
Option 7: Fast pulse modulation.
Option 10: 1 V peak mod input.
Option 11: Fast pulse and high power.
Option 100: Internal pulse generator.

This manual applies to instruments with software issues of 4.06 and higher.

#### © IFR Ltd. 2007

No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, or recorded by any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing by IFR Ltd.

#### Printed in the UK

Manual part no. 46892-225U Issue 9 18 May 1998

# About this manual

This manual explains how to use the 2023 and 2024 AM/FM Signal Generators.

#### Intended audience

Persons engaged on work relating to equipment who have a need for accurately generated signals in the VHF and UHF spectrum.

#### **Structure**

#### Chapter 1

Main features and performance data.

#### Chapter 2

Installation details.

#### Chapter 3

Operation for the experienced user.

#### Chapter 4

Detailed operation including first time usage.

#### Chapter 5

GPIB operation with keywords and sample programs.

#### Chapter 6

Brief technical description.

#### Chapter 7

Instructions for doing acceptance testing.

#### Annex A

Option 100 - Internal pulse generator.

#### Annex B

Option 7 - Fast pulse modulation.

#### Annex C

Option 11 - Fast pulse and high power.

#### **Document conventions**

The following conventions apply throughout this manual:

RF OUTPUT Titles marked on the instrument panel are shown in capital letters, [TRIGGER] Key titles are as shown on the key-caps in square brackets, and Disable Messages on the display are shown in italic letters.

#### Associated publications

There is one other publication covering specific aspects of this equipment:-

• Service manual (46880-068C) covers maintenance and repair of the equipment.

ii 46882-225U

# **CONTENTS**

Preface
---------

#### **Precautions**

Annex C

Index

Chapter 1	GENERAL INFORMATION
Chapter 2	INSTALLATION
Chapter 3	PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION
Chapter 4	LOCAL OPERATION
Chapter 5	REMOTE OPERATION
Chapter 6	TECHNICAL DESCRIPTION
Chapter 7	ACCEPTANCE TESTING
Annex A	OPTION 100 - INTERNAL PULSE GENERATOR
Annex B	OPTION 7 - FAST PULSE MODULATION

**OPTION 11 - FAST PULSE AND HIGH POWER** 

GENERAL INFORMATION INSTALLATION PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION REMOTE OPERATION TECHNICAL DESCRIPTION ACCEPTANCE TESTING INDEX

# **Preface**

# **Patent protection**

The 2023 and 2024 Signal Generators are protected by the following patents:

EP 0322139 GB 2214012 US 4870384

EP 0125790 GB 2140232 US 4609881

ίv 46882-225U

# **Precautions**

WARNING

CAUTION

Note

These terms have specific meanings in this manual:

WARNING

information to prevent personal injury.

CAUTION

information to prevent damage to the equipment.

Note

important general information.

# **Hazard symbols**

The meaning of hazard symbols appearing on the equipment is as follows:

**Symbol** 

Description



General hazard



Dangerous voltage



Toxic hazard

#### General conditions of use

This product is designed and tested to comply with the requirements of IEC/EN61010-1 'Safety requirements for electrical equipment for measurement, control and laboratory use', for Class I, portable equipment and is for use in a pollution degree 2 environment. The equipment is designed to operate from an installation category I and II supply.

Equipment should be protected from the ingress of liquids and precipitation such as rain, snow, etc. When moving the equipment from a cold to a hot environment, it is important to allow the temperature of the equipment to stabilise before it is connected to the supply to avoid condensation forming. The equipment must only be operated within the environmental conditions specified in Chapter 1 'Performance data' in the Operating manual, otherwise the protection provided by the equipment may be impaired.

This product is not approved for use in hazardous atmospheres or medical applications. If the equipment is to be used in a safety-related application, e.g. avionics or military applications, the suitability of the product must be assessed and approved for use by a competent person.

#### WARNING



# **Electrical hazards (AC supply voltage)**

This equipment conforms with IEC Safety Class I, meaning that it is provided with a protective grounding lead. To maintain this protection the supply lead must always be connected to the source of supply via a socket with a grounded contact.

Be aware that the supply filter contains capacitors that may remain charged after the equipment is disconnected from the supply. Although the stored energy is within the approved safety requirements, a slight shock may be felt if the plug pins are touched immediately after removal.

Do not remove covers, no user serviceable parts inside. See list of IFR Ltd International Service Centres at rear of manual.

#### **Fuses**

Note that the internal supply fuse is in series with the live conductor of the supply lead. If connection is made to a 2-pin unpolarized supply socket, it is possible for the fuse to become

transposed to the neutral conductor, in which case, parts of the equipment could remain at supply potential even after the fuse has ruptured.

#### WARNING



#### Fire hazard

Make sure that only fuses of the correct rating and type are used for replacement.

If an integrally fused plug is used on the supply lead, ensure that the fuse rating is commensurate with the current requirements of this equipment. See under 'Performance Data' in Chapter 1 for power requirements.

# WARNING



# **Toxic hazards**

Some of the components used in this equipment may include resins and other materials which give off toxic fumes if incinerated. Take appropriate precautions, therefore, in the disposal of these items.

#### **WARNING**



#### Beryllia

Beryllia (beryllium oxide) is used in the construction of some of the components in this equipment. This material, if incorrectly handled, could cause a danger to health - refer to the Maintenance part of the Service Manual for safe handling precautions.

#### WARNING



# Beryllium copper

Some mechanical components within this instrument are manufactured from beryllium copper. This is an alloy with a beryllium content of approximately 5%. It represents no risk in normal use.

The material should not be machined, welded or subjected to any process where heat is involved.

It must be disposed of as "special waste".

It must NOT be disposed of by incineration.

# WARNING



### Tilt facility

When the instrument is in the tilt position, it is advisable, for stability reasons, not to stack other instruments on top of it.

#### **CAUTION**



# Static sensitive components

This equipment contains static sensitive components which may be damaged by handling - refer to the Maintenance part of the Service Manual for handling precautions.

vi 46882-225U

# **Précautions**

WARNING

CAUTION

Note

Les termes suivants ont, dans ce manuel, des significations particulières:

**WARNING** 

contient des informations pour éviter toute blessure au personnel.

**CAUTION** 

contient des informations pour éviter les dommages aux équipements.

Note

contient d'importantes informations d'ordre général.

# Symboles Signalant Un Risque

La signification des symboles liés à cet équipement est la suivante:

**Symbole** 

Nature du risque



Risques généraux



Tension dangereuse



Danger produits toxiques

# Conditions générales d'utilisation

Ce produit a été conçu et testé pour être conforme aux exigences des normes CEI/EN61010-1 "Règles de sécurité pour appareils électriques de mesurage, de régulation et de laboratoire", pour des équipements Classe I, portables et pour une utilisation dans un environnement de pollution de niveau 2. Cet équipement est conçu pour fonctionner à partir d'une alimentation de catégorie I et II.

Cet équipement doit être protégé de l'introduction de liquides ainsi que des précipitations d'eau, de neige, etc... Lorsqu'on transporte cet équipement d'un environnement chaud vers un environnement froid, il est important de laisser l'équipement se stabiliser en température avant de le connecter à une alimentation afin d'éviter toute formation de condensation. L'appareil doit être utilisé uniquement dans le cadre des conditions d'environnement spécifiées au chapitre 1 "Performance data" du manuel d'utilisation, toute autre utilisation peut endommager les systèmes de protection.

Ce produit n'est pas garanti pour fonctionner dans des atmosphères dangereuses ou pour un usage médical. Si l'équipement doit être utilisé pour des applications en relation avec la sécurité, par exemple des applications militaires ou aéronautiques, la compatibilité du produit doit être établie et approuvée par une personne compétente.

# WARNING



# Sécurité électrique (tension d'alimentation alternative)

Cet appareil est protégé conformément à la norme CEI de sécurité Classe 1, c'est-à-dire que sa prise secteur comporte un fil de protection à la terre. Pour maintenir cette protection, le câble d'alimentation doit toujours être branché à la source d'alimentation par l'intermédiaire d'une prise comportant une borne de terre.

Notez que les filtres d'alimentation contiennent des condensateurs qui peuvent encore être chargés lorsque l'appareil est débranché. Bien que l'énergie contenue soit conforme aux exigences de sécurité, il est possible de ressentir un léger choc si l'on touche les bornes sitôt après débranchement.

Ne pas enlever les capots, aucune pièce réparable ne se trouve à l'intérieur. Contacter un des Centres de Maintenance Internationaux de IFR Ltd dans la liste jointe à la fin du manuel.

46882-225U vii

#### **Fusibles**

Notez que le fusible d'alimentation interne est en série avec la phase du câble d'alimentation. Si la prise d'alimentation comporte deux bornes non polarisées, il est possible de connecter le fusible au neutre. Dans ce cas, certaines parties de l'appareil peuvent rester à un certain potentiel même après coupure du fusible.

# WARNING



# Risque lie au feu

Lors du remplacement des fusibles vérifiez l'exactitude de leur type et de leur valeur.

Si le cable d'alimentation comporte une prise avec fusible intégré, assurez vous que sa valeur est compatible avec les besoins en courant de l'appareil. Pour la consommation, reportez-vous au chapitre 1 "Spécifications".

#### WARNING



# **Danger produits toxiques**

Certains composants utilisés dans cet appareil peuvent contenir des résines et d'autres matières qui dégagent des fumées toxiques lors de leur incinération. Les précautions d'usages doivent donc être prises lorsqu'on se débarrasse de ce type de composant.

#### **WARNING**



#### Le Beryllia

Le Beryllia (oxyde de Beryllium) entre dans la composition de certains composants de cet appareil. Cette matière peut représenter un danger pour la santé s'il elle n'est pas manipulée de façon correcte - se référer à la partie "Maintenance" du "Manuel de Maintenance" pour les précautions de manipulation.

# WARNING



# Bronze au béryllium

Dans cet équipement, certaines pièces mécaniques sont à base de bronze au béryllium. Il s'agit d'un alliage dans lequel le pourcentage de béryllium ne dépasse pas 5%. Il ne présente aucun danger en utilisation normale.

Toutefois, cet alliage ne doit pas être travaillé, soudé ou soumis à un processus qui implique l'utilisation d'une source de chaleur.

En cas de destruction, il sera entreposé dans un container spécial. IL ne devra pas être détruit par incinération.

# WARNING



# Position inclinée

Lorsque l'appareil est dans une position inclinée, il est recommandé, pour des raisons des stabilité, de ne pas y empiler d'autres appareils.

viii 46882-225U

# Vorsichtsmaßnahmen

WARNING

CAUTION

Note

Diese Hinweise haben eine bestimmte Bedeutung in diesem Handbuch:

**WARNING** 

dienen zur Vermeidung von Verletzungsrisiken.

**CAUTION** 

dienen dem Schutz der Geräte.

Note

enthalten wichtige Informationen.

#### Gefahrensymbole

Die Gefahrensymbole auf den Geräten sind wie folgt:

Symbol

Gefahrenart



Allgemeine Gefahr



Gefährliche Spannung



Warnung vor giftigen Substanzen

# Allgemeine Hinweise zur Verwendung

Dieses Produkt wurde entsprechend den Anforderungen von IEC/EN61010-1 "Sicherheitsanforderungen für elektrische Ausrüstung für Meßaufgaben, Steuerung und Laborbedarf", Klasse I, transportabel zur Verwendung in einer Grad 2 verunreinigten Umgebung, entwickelt und getestet. Dieses Gerät ist für Netzversorgung Klasse I und II zugelassen.

Das Gerät sollte vor dem Eindringen von Flüssigkeiten sowie vor Regen, Schnee etc. geschützt werden. Bei Standortänderung von kalter in wärmere Umgebung sollte das Gerät wegen der Kondensation erst nach Anpassung an die wärmere Umgebung mit dem Netz verbunden werden. Das Gerät darf nur in Umgebungsbedingungen wie in Kapitel 1 "Leistungsdaten (Performance data)" der Bedienungsanleitung beschrieben, betrieben werden; ansonsten wird der vom Gerät vorgesehene Schutz des Anwenders beeinträchtigt.

Dieses Produkt ist nicht für den Einsatz in gefährlicher Umgebung (z.B. Ex-Bereich) und für medizinische Anwendungen geprüft. Sollte das Gerät für den Einsatz in sicherheitsrelevanten Anwendungen wie z.B. im Flugverkehr oder bei militaerischen Anwendungen vorgesehen sein, so ist dieser von einer für diesen Bereich zuständigen Person zu beurteilen und genehmigen.

# WARNING



# Elektrische Schläge (Wechselspannungsversorgung)

Das Gerät entspricht IEC Sicherheitsklasse 1 mit einem Schutzleiter nach Erde. Das Netzkabel muß stets an eine Steckdose mit Erdkontakt angeschlossen werden.

Filterkondensatoren in der internen Spannungsversorgung können auch nach Unterbrechung der Spannungszuführung noch geladen sein. Obwohl die darin gespeicherte Energie innerhalb der Sicherheitsmargen liegt, kann ein leichter Spannungsschlag bei Berührung kurz nach der Unterbrechung erfolgen.

Entfernen Sie keine Gehäuseabdeckungen, es befinden sich keine austauschbaren Teile im Gerät. Eine Liste der IFR Servicestellen finden Sie auf der Rückseite des Handbuches.

46882-225U ix

#### Sicherungen

Die interne Sicherung in der Spannungszuführung ist in Reihe mit der spannungsführenden Zuleitung geschaltet. Bei Verbindung mit einer zweiadrigen, nicht gepolten Steckdose kann die Sicherung in der Masseleitung liegen, so daß auch bei geschmolzener Sicherung Geräteteile immer noch auf Spannungspotential sind.

# WARNING



# **Feuergefahr**

Es dürfen nur Ersatzsicherungen vom gleichen Typ mit den korrekten Spezifikationen entsprechend der Stromaufnahme des Gerätes verwendet werden. Siehe hierzu die Leistungsdaten (Performance Data) in Kapitel 1.

#### WARNING



# Warnung vor giftigen Substanzen

In einigen Bauelementen dieses Geräts können Epoxyharze oder andere Materialien enthalten sein, die im Brandfall giftige Gase erzeugen. Bei der Entsorgung müssen deshalb entsprechende Vorsichtsmaßnahmen getroffen werden.

#### WARNING



# **Beryllium Oxid**

Beryllium Oxid wird in einigen Bauelementen verwendet.

Bei inkorrekter Handhabung kann dieses Material Gesundheitsschäden verursachen. Siehe hierzu die Hinweise zur Handhabung im Service-Handbuch.

# WARNING



# Beryllium Kupfer

In diesem Gerät sind einige mechanische Komponenten aus Berylium Kupfer gefertigt. Dies ist eine Verbindung welche aus einem Berylliumanteil von ca. 5 % besteht. Bei normaler Verwendung besteht kein Gesundheitsrisiko.

Das Metall darf nicht bearbeitet, geschweißt oder sonstiger Wärmebehandlung ausgesetzt werden.

Es muß als Sondermüll entsorgt werden.

Es darf nicht durch Verbrennung entsorgt werden.

# WARNING



# Schrägstellung

Bei Schrägstellung des Geräts sollten aus Stabilitätsgründen keine anderen Geräte darauf gestellt werden.

x 46882-225U

# **Precauzioni**

WARNING

CAUTION

Note

Questi termini vengono utilizzati in questo manuale con significati specifici:

WARNING

riportano informazioni atte ad evitare possibili pericoli alla persona.

**CAUTION** 

riportano informazioni per evitare possibili pericoli all'apparecchiatura.

Note

riportano importanti informazioni di carattere generale.

#### Simboli di pericolo

Significato dei simboli di pericolo utilizzati nell'apparato:

Simbolo

#### Tipo di pericolo



Pericolo generico



Tensione pericolosa



Pericolo sostanze tossiche

# Condizioni generali d'uso

Questo prodotto è stato progettato e collaudato per rispondere ai requisiti della direttiva IEC/EN61010-1 'Safety requirements for electrical equipment for measurement, control and laboratory use' per apparati di classe I, trasportabili e per l'uso in un ambiente inquinato di grado 2. L'apparato è stato progettato per essere alimentato da un alimentatore di categoria I e II.

Lo strumento deve essere protetto dal possibile ingresso di liquidi quali, ad es., acqua, pioggia, neve, ecc. Qualora lo strumento venga portato da un ambiente freddo ad uno caldo, è importante lasciare che la temperatura all'interno dello strumento si stabilizzi prima di alimentarlo per evitare formazione di condense. Lo strumento deve essere utilizzato esclusivamente nelle condizioni ambientali descritte nel capitolo 1 'Performance data' del manuale operativo, in caso contrario le protezioni previste nello strumento potrebbero risultare non sufficienti.

Questo prodotto non è stato approvato per essere usato in ambienti pericolosi o applicazioni medicali. Se lo strumento deve essere usato per applicazioni particolari collegate alla sicurezza (per esempio applicazioni militari o avioniche), occorre che una persona o un istituto competente ne certifichi l'uso.

# WARNING



# Pericoli da elettricità (alimentazione c.a.)

Quest 'apparato è provvisto del collegamento di protezione di terra e rispetta le norme di sicurezza IEC, classe 1. Per mantenere questa protezione è necessario che il cavo, la spina e la presa d'alimentazione siano tutti provvisti di terra.

Il circuito d'alimentazione contiene dei filtri i cui condensatori possono restare carichi anche dopo aver rimosso l'alimentazione. Sebbene l'energia immagazzinata è entro i limiti di sicurezza, purtuttavia una leggera scossa può essere avvertita toccando i capi della spina subito dopo averla rimossa.

Non rimuovere i coperchi, utilizzare solo parti di scorta originali. Vedi elenco internazionale dei Centri di Assistenza in fondo al manuale.

46882-225U xi

#### **Fusibili**

Notare che un fusibile è posto sul filo caldo del cavo di alimentazione. Qualora l'alimentazione avvenga tramite due poli non polarizzati, è possibile che il fusibile vada a protezione del neutro per cui anche in caso di una sua rottura, l'apparato potrebbe restare sotto tensione.

#### **WARNING**



# Pericolo d'incendio

Assicurarsi che, in caso di sostituzione, vengano utilizzati solo fusibili della portata e del tipo prescritti.

Se viene usata una spina con fusibili, assicurarsi che questi siano di portata adeguata ai requisiti di alimentazione richiesti dallo strumento. Tali requisiti sono riportati nel cap. 1 "Performance data".

#### **WARNING**



## Pericolo sostanze tossiche

Alcuni dei componenti usati in questo strumento possono contenere resine o altri materiali che, se bruciati, possono emettere fumi tossici. Prendere quindi le opportune precauzioni nell'uso di tali parti.

#### WARNING



#### **Berillio**

Berillio (ossido di berillio) è utilizzato nella costruzione di alcuni componenti di quest'apparato.

Questo materiale, se maneggiato non correttamente, può causare danni alla salute. Far riferimento ai capitoli di manutenzione del Manuale di Servizio per le precauzioni richieste.

# WARNING



#### Rame berillio

Alcuni componenti meccanici in questo strumento sono realizzati in rame berillio. Si tratta di una lega con contenuto di berillio di circa il 5%, che non presenta alcun rischio in usi normali.

Questo materiale non deve essere lavorato, saldato o subire qualsiasi processo che coinvolge alte temperature.

Deve essere eliminato come "rifiuto speciale". Non deve essere eliminato tramite "inceneritore".

# WARNING



#### Posizionamento inclinato

Quando lo strumento è in posizione inclinata è raccomandato, per motivi di stabilità, non sovrapporre altri strumenti.

xii 46882-225U

# **Precauciones**

WARNING

CAUTION

Note

Estos términos tienen significados específicos en este manual:

WARNING

contienen información referente a prevención de daños personales.

**CAUTION** 

contienen información referente a prevención de daños en equipos.

Note

contienen información general importante.

# Símbolos de peligro

Los significados de los símbolos de peligro que aparecen en los equipos son los siguientes:

#### Símbolo Naturaleza del peligro



Peligro general



Voltaje peligroso



Aviso de toxicidad

# Condiciones generales de uso

Este producto ha sido diseñado y probado para cumplir los requerimientos de la normativa IEC/EN61010-1 "Requerimientos de la normativa para equipos eléctricos de medida, control y uso en laboratorio", para equipos clase I, portátiles y para uso en un ambiente con un grado de contaminación 2. El equipo ha sido diseñado para funcionar sobre una instalación de alimentación de categorías I y II.

Debe protegerse el equipo de la entrada de líquidos y precipitaciones como nieve, lluvia, etc. Cuando se traslada el equipo de entorno frío a un entorno caliente, es importante aguardar la estabilización el equipo para evitar la condensación. Sólo debe utilizarse el aparato en las condiciones ambientales especificadas en el capítulo 1 "Especificaciones" o "Performance data" del Manual de Instrucciones/Manual de Operación, en caso contrario la propia protección del equipo puede resultar dañada.

Este producto no ha sido aprobado para su utilización en entornos peligrosos o en aplicaciones médicas. Si se va a utilizar el equipo en una aplicación con implicaciones en cuanto a seguridad, como por ejemplo aplicaciones de aviónica o militares, es preciso que un experto competente en materia de seguridad apruebe su uso.

# WARNING



# Nivel peligroso de electricidad (tensión de red)

Este equipo cumple las normas IEC Seguridad Clase 1, lo que significa que va provisto de un cable de protección de masa. Para mantener esta protección, el cable de alimentación de red debe de conectarse siempre a una clavija con terminal de masa.

Tenga en cuenta que el filtro de red contiene condensadores que pueden almacenar carga una vez desconectado el equipo. Aunque la energía almacenada está dentro de los requisitos de seguridad, pudiera sentirse una ligera descarga al tocar la clavija de alimentación inmediatamente después de su desconexión de red.

No quitar las tapas, en el interior no existen piezas reemplazables por el usuario. Vea la lista de Centros de Servicios Internacionales en la parte trasera del manual.

46882-225U xiii

#### **Fusibles**

Se hace notar que el fusible de alimentación interno está enserie con el activo del cable de alimentación a red. Si la clavija de alimentación de red cuenta con sólo dos terminales sin polaridad, el fusible puede pasar a estar en serie con el neutro, en cuyo caso existen partes del equipo que permanecerían a tensión de red incluso después de que el fusible haya fundido.

#### **WARNING**



# Peligro de incendio

Asegúrese de utilizar sólo fusibles del tipo y valores especificados como recuesto.

Si se utiliza una clavija con fusible incorporado, asegúrese de que los valores del fusible corresponden a los requeridos por el equipo. Ver sección de especificaciones del capítulo 1 para comprobar los requisitos de alimentación.

#### **WARNING**



#### Aviso de toxicidad

Alguno de los componentes utilizados en este equipo pudieran incluir resinas u otro tipo de materiales que al arder produjeran sustancias tóxicas, Por tanto, tome las debidas precauciones en la manipulación de esas piezas.

#### WARNING



#### **Berilio**

Berilio (óxido de berilio) Este material es utilizado en la fabricación de alguno de los componentes de este equipo.

Si se manipulase incorrectamente podria causar daños a la salud - En la sección de mantenimiento y reparación encontrará normas de manejo de seguridad.

# WARNING



#### **Berilio-cobre**

Algunos componentes mecánicos contenidos en este instrumento incorporan berilio-cobre en su proceso de fabricación. Se trata de una aleación con un contenido aproximado de berilio del 5%, lo que no representa ningún riesgo durante su uso normal.

El material no debe ser manipulado, soldado, ni sometido a ningún proceso que implique la aplicación de calor.

Para su eliminación debe tratarse como un "residuo especial". El material NO DEBE eliminarse mediante incineración.

# WARNING



# Tener en cuenta con el equipo inclinado

Si utiliza el equipo en posición inclinada, se recomienda, por razones de estabilidad, no apilar otros equipos encima de él.

xiv 46882-225U

# Chapter 1 GENERAL INFORMATION

# **Contents**

Introduction	1-2
Main features	1-2
Operation	1-2
Display	1-2
Frequency selection	1-2
Output	1-2
Calibration	1-3
Modulation	1-3
Incrementing	1-3
Frequency sweep	1-3
Memory	1-3
Programming	1-4
Calibration data	1-4
Performance data	1-5
Versions, options and accessories	1-9

#### Introduction

The 2023 and 2024 are portable and lightweight synthesized signal generators covering the frequency range 9 kHz to 1.2 GHz (2023) and 9 kHz to 2.4 GHz (2024). A dot matrix display with a comprehensive set of utility menus allow flexibility of operation and ease of use. The RF output can be amplitude, frequency, phase or pulse modulated. An internal programmable AF source is capable of generating simultaneous two-tone modulation.

All parameters can be entered from a front panel keyboard and a rotary control can be used to adjust most settings. Microprocessor control ensures that the instruments are flexible and easy to use and allows programming by either the General Purpose Interface Bus (GPIB) or by RS-232. The GPIB is designed to IEEE Standard 488.2. The interfaces allow remote control of all functions except the supply switch, and allow the instruments to be used either manually or as part of a fully automated test system.

#### Main features

#### Operation

Selection of parameters on the screen may involve one or more of the numeric, hard or menu selection keys or the rotary control knob. Parameters may be set to specific values by numeric key entry, while values may be varied in steps of any size using the DOWN/UP keys or altered by moving the control knob, set to a particular sensitivity.

#### **Display**

The display is a dot matrix liquid crystal panel, with backlighting. Display contrast may be varied to accommodate differing lighting conditions and the setting saved in memory. A graphical display test is available to the user.

#### Frequency selection

Carrier frequency is either selected directly via the keyboard or remotely via the interfaces. Frequency resolution is 1 Hz across the band. A series of carrier frequencies can be stored in non-volatile memory for recall when required.

#### **Output**

RF output up to +13 dBm can be set by direct keyboard entry with a resolution of 0.1 dB over the entire range. For instruments fitted with the high power option, RF output is increased to +25 dBm. A carrier ON/OFF key is provided to completely disable the output.

A choice of level units is available to the user and provision is made for the conversion of units (for example, dBm to  $\mu$ V) by a simple keypress.

An electronic trip protects the generator output against reverse power of up to 50 W. This prevents damage to output circuits when RF or DC power is accidentally applied to the RF OUTPUT connector.

To facilitate testing of receiver squelch systems, an attenuator hold function allows control of the RF output without introducing RF level drop-outs from the step attenuator.

The RF output level can be offset by up to  $\pm 5.0$  dB to compensate for cable or switching losses, or standardize a group of instruments.

Maximum RF output level can be set so as to protect sensitive devices connected to the RF OUTPUT socket.

1-2 46882-225U

#### **Spectral purity**

With an SSB phase noise performance of typically -121 dBc/Hz at 20 kHz offset from a 1 GHz carrier, these instruments can be used for both in-channel and adjacent channel receiver measurements. Harmonically related signals and non-harmonics are typically better than -25 dBc and -60 dBc respectively.

#### Calibration

This instrument has a recommended two year calibration interval after which it should be returned for recalibration (for addresses refer to 'Addresses' section at end of manual).

#### Modulation

Comprehensive amplitude, frequency and phase modulations are available. Pulse modulation can be applied to the carrier from an external pulse source. The instrument also accepts one or two logic level inputs to produce a 2-level or 4-level FSK modulated output. An internal modulation oscillator is provided, having a frequency range of 0.01 Hz to 20 kHz. The oscillator is capable of generating one or two modulation tones simultaneously in one modulation channel. An independent BNC input on the front panel allows external modulation signals to be combined with the internal signal(s). These sources can be combined to give a number of modulation modes. The pulse modulation can be used in combination with the other forms of modulation.

The frequency modulation range provides a 1 dB bandwidth of typically 100 kHz and provides FM deviation up to a maximum of 100 kHz. AC or DC coupled FM can be selected. Phase modulation is also available with a 9 kHz bandwidth up to a maximum of 10 radians.

Amplitude modulation with a 1 dB bandwidth of typically 30 kHz and with modulation depths of up to 99.9% is available with a resolution of 0.1%. Pulse modulation is available as standard with typical rise and fall times of less than 10 µs and 40 dB on/off ratio.

The external input voltage required for 100% modulation is 1 V RMS or, optionally, 1 V peak. To accommodate other signal levels, Automatic Level Control (ALC) can be selected which provides correctly calibrated modulation for inputs between 0.75 and 1.25 V RMS.

A MOD ON/OFF key simplifies the testing of signal to noise ratio.

An optional fast pulse modulator improves the rise/fall times to typically 10 ns.

#### Incrementing

All major parameters can be incremented or decremented in step sizes entered via keyboard entry or remotely. If no step size is entered for a parameter, the steps are preset to 1 kHz for carrier frequency, 1 kHz for modulation oscillator, 1 kHz for FM deviation, 0.1% for AM depth, 0.01 rad for  $\Phi$ M and 1 dB for output level.

In addition, the rotary control knob can be used to vary the parameter with the sensitivity of the knob being changed by means of the  $\times 10$  and  $\div 10$  keys.

#### Frequency sweep

The sweep capability of the instrument allows comprehensive testing of systems. Sweeps may be logarithmic or linear. Four parameters are used to specify sweep; start, stop, step size and time per step and a percentage increment in the case of logarithmic sweep, all of which may be specified by the user. The sweep can be paused at any time. During the sweep the RF level can be altered using the rotary control. Sweep triggering can be single shot or continuous and can be initiated directly or on the detection of a trigger. The triggering signal may either be programmed or from a TTL signal applied to the rear panel TRIGGER input.

#### Memory

The instrument provides both non-volatile and volatile memory for storing instrument settings. The non-volatile memory provides 100 instrument settings and 100 settings of carrier frequency only. The volatile memory (RAM) also provides 100 instrument settings. Any one of the non-volatile instrument settings can be selected as the power-up setting for the instrument.

46882-225U 1-3

#### **Memory cloning**

The stored settings in one instrument can be easily transferred (without the use of a controller) to another instrument using the RS-232 interface, or to several other instruments using the GPIB interface.

#### **Memory sequencing**

A software facility allows sequences of stored instrument settings to be defined. The incrementing facilities can then be used to cycle through the settings in manually operated test systems or be operated via an external trigger.

#### **Memory protection**

To prevent accidental change of the contents of the stored settings, individual memories or ranges of memories can be write-protected.

#### **Programming**

A GPIB interface is fitted so that all functions are controllable via the interface bus which is designed to the IEEE Standard 488.2. The instrument can function both as talker and listener. The instrument also has an RS-232 interface which uses the common GPIB command set. The interfaces enable the instrument to be remotely controlled as well as being used to transfer settings (cloning) from one instrument to another.

#### **Calibration data**

All alignment data is digitally derived. Realignment can be undertaken, without removing covers, by protected front panel functions or via the GPIB interface.

1-4 46882-225U

#### Performance data

#### **Carrier frequency**

Range: 9 kHz to 1.2 GHz (2023). 9 kHz to 2.4 GHz (2024).

Resolution: 1 Hz.

Accuracy: Equal to the frequency standard accuracy.

RF output

Range: -140 dBm to +13 dBm.

When AM is selected the maximum RF output level decreases linearly with increasing

AM depth to +7 dBm at 99.9% depth.

Resolution: 0.1 dB

Accuracy: For output levels above -127 dBm and over a temperature range of 17 to 27°C:

 $\pm 0.8$  dB to 1.2 GHz;  $\pm 1.6$  dB to 2.4 GHz.

Temperature coefficient  $<\pm0.02$  dB/°C to 1.2 GHz, and  $<\pm0.04$  dB/°C to 2.4 GHz.

Attenuator hold: Selection of Attenuator Hold provides for uncalibrated level reduction of at least 10 dB

without the mechanical attenuator operating.

RF output connector: 50  $\Omega$ , type-N connector to MIL 390123D.

VSWR: For output levels less than -5 dBm output VSWR is less than 1.3:1 for carrier frequencies

up to 1.2 GHz and less than 1.5:1 for carrier frequencies up to 2.4 GHz.

Output protection: Protected against the application of reverse power to the output connector for levels up

to 50 W from 50  $\Omega$  or 25 W from a source VSWR of 5:1. Protection circuit can be reset

from the front panel or via the GPIB/RS-232 interfaces.

75  $\Omega$  calibration: The output level can be entered as the value after a 50/75  $\Omega$  external adapter.

**Spectral purity** 

Harmonics: Typically better than -30 dBc for RF levels up to +7 dBm.

Typically better than -25 dBc for RF levels up to +13 dBm.

Non-harmonics: Better than -70 dBc for carrier frequencies up to 1 GHz.

Better than -64 dBc for carrier frequencies above 1 GHz. Better than -60 dBc for carrier frequencies above 2 GHz.

Residual FM (FM off): Less than 4.5 Hz RMS in a 300 Hz to 3.4 kHz unweighted bandwidth at a carrier

frequency of 1 GHz.

Residual FM (typical) <1 Hz at 249 MHz <2 Hz at 501 MHz <3 Hz at 1001 MHz <6 Hz at 2001 MHz

SSB phase noise: Better than -124 dBc/Hz at 20 kHz offset from a 470 MHz carrier.

Typically -121 dBc/Hz at 20 kHz offset from a 1 GHz carrier.

RF leakage: Less than 0.5  $\mu$ V at the carrier frequency into a two-turn 25 mm diameter loop 25 mm

from the surface of the signal generator.

**Modulation** FM, AM or phase modulation can be applied to the carrier from an internal or external

modulation source. The internal modulation source is capable of generating two simultaneous signals into any one of the modulation channels. Internal and external modulation can be simultaneously enabled to produce combined amplitude and frequency (or phase) modulation. Pulse modulation can be applied to the carrier from an external pulse source. The pulse modulation can be used in combination with the other forms of modulation. 2 level or 4 level FSK modulation can be applied to the carrier

using data from an external source.

Frequency modulation

Deviation range: 0 to 100 kHz.

Resolution: 3 digits or 1 Hz.

Bandwidth (1 dB): DC to 100 kHz (DC coupled),

10 Hz to 100 kHz (AC coupled),

20 Hz to 100 kHz (AC coupled with ALC).

Accuracy:  $\pm 5\%$  at 1 kHz modulation rate.

Carrier frequency Less than 1% of the set frequency deviation.

46882-225U 1-5

offset (DC coupled):

Distortion: Less than 1% at 1 kHz rate for deviations up to 100 kHz. Typically 0.3% at 1 kHz rate for

deviations up to 10 kHz.

Group delay: Less than 5 µs to 100 kHz.

**FSK** 

Modes: 2 level or 4 level FSK.

Data source: External data connected to 2FSK connector (2 level) or 2FSK and 4FSK connectors

(4 level).

Frequency shift: Settable up to  $\pm 100$  kHz. As FM deviation accuracy. Accuracy:

Timing jitter: ±3.2 μs

Filter: 8th order Bessel, -3 dB at 20 kHz.

Phase modulation

0 to 10 radians. Range:

3 digits or 0.01 radians. Resolution: Bandwidth (3 dB): 100 Hz to 10 kHz.

Accuracy:  $\pm 5\%$  at 1 kHz modulation rate.

Less than 3% at 10 radians at 1 kHz. Distortion:

Typically 0.5% for deviations up to 1 radian at 1 kHz.

Amplitude modulation (for carrier frequencies <500 MHz, usable to 1.5 GHz)

> 0 to 99.9%. Range:

Bandwidth (1 dB): DC to 30 kHz (DC coupled),

10 Hz to 30 kHz (AC coupled),

20 Hz to 30 kHz (AC coupled with ALC).

Resolution: 0.1%.

Accuracy: ±5% of set depth at 1 kHz rate at +17°C to 27°C ambient temperature.

Temperature coefficient <0.02% per °C.

Distortion: Less than 2.5% at 1 kHz rate for modulation depths up to 80%.

Less than 1.5% at 1 kHz rate for modulation depths up to 30%.

 $\Phi M$  on AM: Typically 0.1 radians at 30% depth at 470 MHz.

Pulse modulation (for fast pulse see Options 7 or 11 when fitted)

> Carrier frequency range: 32 MHz to 2.4 GHz, usable to 10 MHz.

Maximum guaranteed output is reduced to +8 dBm (+20 dBm or +14 dBm with high RF level range:

power option) when pulse modulation is selected.

RF level accuracy: Maximum additional uncertainty is ±0.5 dB.

Input: Rear panel BNC connector with an input impedance of 10 kΩ nominal. A logical '1' (5 V) turns

the carrier on, a logical '0' (0 V) turns the carrier off. Maximum safe input is  $\pm 15$  V.

On-off ratio: Better than 40 dB,

better than 45 dB below 1.2 GHz.

Rise and fall time: Less than 10 us. Overshoot: Less than 1 dB.

Modulation oscillator The internal modulation oscillator is capable of generating one or two modulation tones

simultaneously in one modulation channel.

Frequency range: 0.01 Hz to 20 kHz. Resolution: 0.01 Hz to 100 Hz, 0.1 Hz to 1 kHz. 1 Hz to 20 kHz

Less than 0.1% at 1 kHz.

Distortion: Typically 1 dB DC to 20 kHz. Sine wave frequency response:

1-6 46882-225U Waveforms: Sine (to 20 kHz),

triangle or square wave (to 3 kHz). Square wave jitter <6.4 μs on any edge.

The modulation oscillator signal is available on a front panel BNC connector at a nominal Output:

level of 2 V RMS EMF from a 600  $\Omega$  source impedance.

**External modulation input** A front panel external modulation input is provided.

Input level: 1 V RMS (1.414 V peak) sine wave for set deviation. Input sensitivity may be optionally

specified for 1 V peak (Option 10). Maximum safe input is ±15 V.

Input impedance: 100 kO nominal

Levels the applied external modulation over the range 0.75 to 1.25 V RMS. High and **Modulation ALC:** 

low indicators in display indicate when the input is outside levelling range.

A carrier frequency sweep mode is provided. The sweep is defined by entry of the start, Sweep mode

stop and frequency step size. The sweep step size may be specified linearly or logarithmically. The step time can be set from 20 ms to 10 s per step. A trigger input on the rear panel may be used to trigger a step or the complete sweep. Sweep can be set

to continuous.

Frequency standard The carrier frequency and internal modulation frequency are synthesized from either an

internal reference oscillator or an external reference.

Internal standard: 10 MHz TCXO.

Less than  $\pm 1$  in  $10^6$  per year. Aging rate:

Better than  $\pm 5$  in  $10^7$  over the temperature range 0 to  $55^{\circ}$ C. Temperature stability:

External standard: Requires an input of 220 mV RMS to 1.8 V RMS into 1  $k\Omega$  on rear panel BNC

connector. Input frequency can be 1 MHz or 10 MHz.

Output: Rear panel BNC socket provides an output of 10 MHz at a nominal level of 2 V

pk-pk into 50  $\Omega$ .

Calibration interval Recommended 2 years. Realignment can be accomplished by GPIB control or from the

front panel. There are no mechanical adjustments required for realignment.

Remote control

GPIB: All functions except the supply switch are remotely programmable.

Complies with the following subsets as defined in IEEE Std 488.1: SH1, AH1, T6, TE0, Capabilities:

L4, LE0, SR1, PP0, DC1, DT1, C0, E2.

RS-232: All functions except the supply switch are remotely programmable.

Connector: 9-way male D-type. Baud rate: 300 to 9600 bit/s.

Handshake: Hardware: DTR, RTS, CTS and DSR.

Software: XON and XOFF.

Electrical: Interface to EIA-232-D.

Conforms to the protection requirements of Council Directive 89/336/EEC. **Electromagnetic compatibility** 

Complies with the limits specified in the following standards:

EN55011 Class B CISPR 11 IEC 1000-4-2,-3,-4 EN50082-1 IEC 1000-3-2 FN61000-3-2

Safety This instrument is designed to comply with the requirements of EN61010-1/IEC1010-1,

for Class 1 portable equipment and is for use in a pollution degree 2 environment. The

equipment is designed to operate from an installation category 1 and 2 supply.

Rated range of use (over which full

specification is met)

Temperature: 0 to +55°C.

Humidity: Up to 93% at 40°C. Altitude: Up to 3050 m (10,000 ft).

Conditions of storage and

transport

Temperature: -40°C to +71°C.

Up to 95% at 40°C. Humidity: Up to 4600 m (15,000 ft). Altitude:

47 to 63 Hz at 90 to 132 V, or 188 to 264 V at 175 VA maximum. Power requirements

Dimensions and weight Height Width Depth Weight

107 mm 419 mm 440 mm <8 kg 4.2 in 16.5 in 17.3 in <17.6 lb

46882-225U 1-7

#### **Options**

#### Option 1: No attenuator

Omits the internal step attenuator. Specification as standard instrument with the following exceptions:

RF output range: -2 dBm to +15 dBm. When AM is selected the maximum output level reduces linearly

with AM depth to +9 dBm at maximum AM depth.

RF level accuracy: As standard instrument for levels between -2 dBm and +15 dBm.

Pulse modulation: Not available.

Reverse power protection: Reverse power protection is not provided.

#### Option 2: DC operation

Allows for operation from an external DC power source in addition to an AC power source. Specification as standard instrument with the following additions:

DC supply range: 11 to 32 V.

18 to 32 V when acting as backup to AC supply.

DC consumption: 70 W with Option 3 not fitted.

AC supply frequency 47 to 440 Hz at 90 to 132 V,
47 to 63 Hz at 188 to 264 V.

#### Option 3: High power

Increases maximum output from the normal +13 dBm. Specification as standard instrument with the following exceptions:

RF output range: -140 dBm to +25 dBm (output power above +19 dBm is uncalibrated for carrier

frequencies above 1.2 GHz).

Maximum output is reduced by 5 dB when pulse modulation is selected and/or by up to

6 dB dependant upon set AM depth.

RF level accuracy: Over a temperature range 17°C to 27°C:

 $\pm 1$  dB up to 1.2 GHz,  $\pm 2$  dB up to 2.4 GHz.

Temperature coefficient < $\pm 0.02$  dB/°C to 1.2 GHz, and < $\pm 0.04$  dB/°C to 2.4 GHz.

Harmonics: Typically better than -25 dBc for levels 6 dB below the maximum specified output.

#### Option 4: High stability frequency standard

Replaces the internal TCXO with a high stability OCXO. Specification as standard instrument with the following exceptions:

Aging rate:  $<\pm 2.5$  in  $10^7$  per year,  $<\pm 5$  in  $10^9$  per day after 2 months continuous use.

Temperature stability: Better than  $\pm 5$  in  $10^8$  over the temperature range 0 to  $50^{\circ}$ C.

Warm-up time: Within 2 in 10<sup>7</sup> of final frequency 10 minutes after switch on at a temperature of 20°C.

#### **Option 5: Rear panel connectors**

The front panel connectors RF OUTPUT, LF OUTPUT and EXT MOD INPUT are relocated on the rear panel for rack mounted operation.

**Option 7:** See Annex B.

**Option 10:** 1 V peak mod input.

The external modulation input level is changed to 1 V peak sine wave for set deviation.

#### External modulaton input

Level 1 V peak (0.707 V RMS) sine wave for set deviation. Maximum safe input is

±15 V.

1-8 46882-225U

**Option 11:** See Annex C.

Option 100: See Annex A.

# Versions, options and accessories

When ordering please quote the full ordering number information.

Ordering numbers	Versions
2023	9 kHz to 1.2 GHz Signal Generator.
2024	9 kHz to 2.4 GHz Signal Generator.
	Options
Option 1	No attenuator.
Option 2	DC operation.
Option 3	High power.
Option 4	High stability frequency standard.
Option 5	Rear panel connectors.
Option 7	Fast pulse modulation.
Option 10	1 V peak mod input.
Option 11	Fast pulse and high power.
Option 100	Internal pulse generator.
	Supplied accessories
_	AC power supply lead (see 'Power cords', Chap. 2).
46882-225U	Operating manual (this manual).
43130-119U	DC supply lead (supplied with Option 2 only).
	Optional accessories
54311-208Z	50/75 $\Omega$ adapter.
46880-068C	Service manual.
46884-792D	Rack bracket kit containing rack mounting brackets only.
46662-601J	Transit case.
46662-602F	Carrying case.
46662-602F 46884-650F	Carrying case. RS-232 cable, 9-way female to 9-way female, 1.5 m.
	, ,
46884-650F	RS-232 cable, 9-way female to 9-way female, 1.5 m.

46882-225U 1-9

# **EC Declaration of Conformity**

Certificate Ref. No.

#### **EEA00003**

The undersigned, representing:

Manufacturer: IFR Ltd.

Address: Longacres House, Norton Green Road,

Stevenage, Hertfordshire, U.K. SG1 2BA

Herewith declares that the product:

Equipment Description: AM/FM Signal Generator

Model No. 2023/2024

Options: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 10, 11 and 100

is in conformity with the following EC directive(s) (including all applicable amendments)

Reference No.	Title:
73/23/EEC	Low Voltage Directive
89/336/EEC	EMC Directive

and that the standards and/or technical specifications referenced below have been applied:

Safety:	EMC:	
EN61010-1:1993	EN55011 Class B	
IEC61010-1:1990	EN50082-1:1992	
	EN60555-2:1987	

IFR Stevenage	(Place)	5th May 1998	(Date

Alan Smithies. (Signature)

Alan Smithies - Product Liability Manager

46882-225U 1-11

# Chapter 2 INSTALLATION

# **Contents**

Initial visual inspection	2-2
Installation requirements	2-2
Mounting arrangements	2-2
Ventilation	2-2
Power cords	2-2
Goods-in checks	2-2
Instrument operating position	2-4
AC operation	2-5
Connecting to supply	2-5
AC fuse	2-5
Internal fuse	2-5
DC operation (Option 2)	2-5
Connecting to supply	2-5
DC fuse	2-5
DC supply cable	2-5
General purpose interface bus (GPIB)	
GPIB cable connection	2-6
GPIB connector contact assignments	2-6
IEEE to IEC conversion	
Interface bus connection	2- <del>6</del>
RS-232 interface.	
RS-232 connector	2-7
Rack mounting	2-7
Routine maintenance	2-7
Safety testing and inspection	2-7
Cleaning	2-9
Cleaning the LCD window	2-9
Putting into storage	2-9
res	

# List of figures

Fig. 2-1	DC INPUT socket showing connector polarity (viewed from rear of instrument)	2-5
Fig. 2-2	GPIB connector contact assignments (viewed from rear of instrument)	2-6
Fig. 2-3	IEEE to IEC conversion	2-6
Fig. 2-4	RS-232 connector contact assignments (viewed from rear of instrument)	2-7

46882-225U 2-1

#### WARNING

# Initial visual inspection

After unpacking the instrument, inspect the shipping container and its cushioning material for signs of stress or damage. If damage is identified, retain the packing material for examination by the carrier in the event that a claim is made. Examine the instrument for signs of damage; do not connect the instrument to a supply when damage is present, internal electrical damage could result in shock if the instrument is turned on.

#### **CAUTION**

# Installation requirements

#### Mounting arrangements

Excessive temperatures may affect the performance of the instrument. Completely remove the plastic cover, if one is supplied over the case, and avoid standing the instrument on or close to other equipment which is hot.

#### Ventilation

This instrument is forced air cooled by a fan mounted on the rear panel. Air must be allowed to circulate freely through the ventilator grills located on the side and underside of the instrument. Before switching on the instrument, ensure that the fan outlet on the rear panel is not restricted (i.e., clearance of at least 75 mm at the rear, 25 mm at each side, 15 mm on the underside). Failure to provide to adequate clearances will increase internal temperatures and reduce the instrument reliability, so its performance may not meet specification.

#### **Power cords**

#### Class I power cords (3-core)

#### General

When the equipment has to be plugged into a Class II (ungrounded) 2-terminal socket outlet, the cable should either be fitted with a 3-pin Class I plug and used in conjunction with an adapter incorporating a ground wire, or be fitted with a Class II plug with an integral ground wire. The ground wire must be securely fastened to ground. Grounding one terminal on a 2-terminal socket will not provide adequate protection.

In the event that a moulded plug has to be removed from a lead, it must be disposed of immediately. A plug with bare flexible cords is hazardous if engaged in a live socket outlet.

Power cords with the following terminations are available from IFR Ltd. Please check with your local sales office for availability.

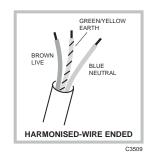
This equipment is provided with a 3-wire (grounded) cordset which includes a moulded IEC 320 connector for connection to the equipment. The cable must be fitted with an approved plug which, when plugged into an appropriate 3-terminal socket outlet, grounds the case of the equipment. Failure to ground the equipment may expose the operator to hazardous voltage levels. Depending upon the destination country, the colour coding of the wires will differ:-

2-2 46882-225U

#### Wire ended

Country	IEC 320 plug type	IFR part number
Universal	Straight through	23424-158
Universal	Right angled	23424-159

	North America	Harmonised
Line (Live)	Black	Brown
Neutral	White	Blue
Ground (Earth)	Green	Green/Yellow



#### **British**

Country	IEC 320 plug type	IFR part number
United Kingdom	Straight through	23422-001
United Kingdom	Right angled	23422-002

The UK lead is fitted with an ASTA approved moulded plug to BS

A replaceable 13 A fuse to BS 1362 is contained within the plug. This fuse is only designed to protect the lead assembly. Never use the plug with the detachable fuse cover omitted or if the cover is damaged.



The fuse(s) or circuit breaker to protect the equipment is fitted at the back of the equipment.

#### **North American**

Country	IEC 320 plug type	IFR part number
North American	Straight through	23422-004
North American	Right angled	23422-005

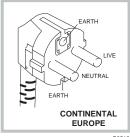
The North American lead is fitted with a NEMA 5-15P (Canadian CS22.2 No 42) plug and carries approvals from UL and CSA for use in the USA and Canada.



#### **Continental Europe**

Country	IEC 320 plug type	IFR part number
Europe	Straight through	23422-006
Europe	Right angled	23422-007

The Continental European lead is fitted with a right angle IEC83 standard C4 plug (CEE 7/7) which allows it to be used in sockets with either a male earth pin (standard C 3b) or side earth clips (standard C 2b) the latter is commonly called the German 'Schuko' plug. In common with other Schuko style plugs, the plug is not polarized when



fitted into a Schuko socket. The lead carries approvals for use in Austria, Belgium, Finland, France, Germany, Holland, Italy, Norway and Sweden. Note that this plug will not fit Italian standard CEI 23-16 outlets. The lead should not be used in Denmark given that the earth connection will not be made.

#### **Français**

Le câble d'alimentation d'Europe Continentale est muni d'un connecteur mâle à angle droit type CEI83, standard C4 (CEE 7/7), qui peut être utilisé dans une prise femelle à ergot de terre (standard C 3b) ou à clips latéraux (standard C 2b), cette dernière étant communément appelée prise "Schuko" allemande. De la même façon que les autres connecteurs de type Schuko, celui-ci n'est pas polarisé lorsqu'il s'adapte à une prise femelle Schuko. Ce câble d'alimentation est

46882-225U 2-3 homologué en Allemagne, Autriche, Belgique, Finlande, France, Hollande, Italie, Norvège et Suède. A noter que ce connecteur n'est pas compatible avec les prises de courant italiennes au standard CEI 23-16. Ce câble ne doit pas être utilisé au Danemark à cause du défaut de connexion de masse.

#### **Deutsch**

Das kontinentaleuropäische Netzkabel ist mit einem rechtwinkeligen Stecker nach IEC83 C4 (CEE7/7) Standard versehen, welcher sowohl in Steckdosen mit Erde-Stift (Standard C 3b) oder seitlichen Erdeklemmen, im allgemeinen "Schukosteckdose" genannt, paßt. Üblicherweise ist der Schukostecker bei Verwendung in Schukosteckdosen nicht gepolt. Dieses Netzkabel besitzt Zulassung für Österreich, Belgien, Finnland, Frankreich, Deutschland, Holland, Italien, Norwegen und Schweden.

Hinweis: Dieser Schukostecker paßt nicht in die italienischen Standardsteckdosen nach CEI 23-16 Norm. Dieses Netzkabel sollte nicht in Dänemark verwendet werden, da hier keine Erdeverbindung hergestellt wird.

#### **Español**

El cable de alimentación tipo Europeo Continental dispone de una clavija C4 normalizada IEC83 (CEE 7/7) que permite su utilización tanto en bases de enchufe con toma de tierra macho (tipo C 3b) o con toma de tierra mediante contactos laterales (tipo C 2b) que, en este último caso, suele denominarse "Schuko". Al igual que cualquier otra clavija tipo Schuko, las conexiones a red no están polarizadas cuando se conectan a una base tipo Schuko. El cable lleva autorización para su uso en Austria, Bélgica, Finlandia, Francia, Alemania, Holanda, Italia, Noruega y Suecia. Observe que este cable no se adapta a la norma italiana CEI 23-16. El cable no debe utilizarse en Dinamarca en el caso de no efectuarse conexión a tierra.

#### Italiano

I cavi d'alimentazione per l'Europa continentale vengono forniti terminati con una spina ad angolo retto del tipo C4 secondo lo standard IEC83 (CEE 7/7) che può essere usato in prese in cui la terra può essere fornita o tramite connettore maschio (C 3b) o tramite clips laterali (C 2b), quest'ultima comunemente detta di tipo tedesca "Schuko". Questa spina, quando collegata ad una presa Schuko, non è polarizzata.

Il cavo può essere usato in Austria, Belgio, Finlandia, Francia, Germania, Olanda, Norvegia, Svezia ed Italia. E' da notare che per l'Italia questo non risponde allo standard CEI 23-16.

Questa spina non dovrebbe invece essere usata in Danimarca in quanto non realizza il collegamento di terra.

#### Goods-in checks

The following goods-in check verifies that the instrument is functioning correctly, but does not verify conformance to the listed specification. To verify that the instrument conforms to the specification given in Chapter 1, refer to Chapter 7, 'Acceptance testing'.

- (1) Ensure that the correct fuse is fitted (accessible from the rear panel) and connect the instrument to the supply.
- (2) Switch on and check that a display is present.
- (3) If the instrument appears to be completely dead, carry out the following:

Check that the mains power supply line is providing power to the instrument.

Check that the mains fuses have not blown.

# Instrument operating position

For reasons of stability and ventilation the instrument must only be operated on its underside feet (with or without the tilt stands).

2-4 46882-225U

#### **AC** operation

#### Connecting to supply

Ensure that the AC supply is correctly connected to the POWER SUPPLY socket. For supplies in the range 90 - 132 V and 188 - 264 V the PSU automatically selects the appropriate range. There is no manual voltage range selection provided.

Note that for AC operation when Option 2: DC operation is fitted, the AC supply frequency range is extended to 440 Hz within the AC supply range of 90 to 132 V.

#### AC fuse

For the AC voltage range of 90 to 264 V the fuse rating is 2 A-T (time lag). The AC fuse is a cartridge type measuring 20 mm x 5 mm.

The fuse-holder is integral with the rear panel 3-pin supply plug. For access to change the fuse, use a screwdriver to lever out the holder.

#### Internal fuse

Note that there is an additional, non-operator replaceable internal, fuse fitted in the switched mode power supply (not applicable to instruments fitted with Option 2, DC operation, which have a different power supply).

#### DC operation (Option 2)

#### Connecting to supply

Before connecting the instrument to a DC supply, for an instrument fitted with Option 2, check that the DC supply is within the following range:

11 to 32 V

If, however, the DC supply is to provide a back-up for the AC supply, the following DC supply range must be used:

18 to 32 V

#### DC fuse

For the DC voltage range of 11 to 32 V the fuse rating is 10 A-T (time lag). Fuses are cartridge type measuring 20 mm  $\times$  5 mm.

#### DC supply cable

Connection is made to a 3-pin polarized plug on the instrument (see Fig. 2-1). Note that the negative (-) connector is internally connected to the chassis of the instrument. A suitable lead is available as a supplied accessory (see Chap. 1 'Versions, options and accessories').

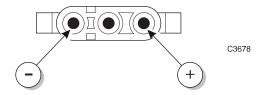


Fig. 2-1 DC input socket showing connector polarity (viewed from rear of instrument)

# General purpose interface bus (GPIB)

The GPIB interface built into the instrument enables the signal generator to be remotely controlled to form part of an automatic measuring system, as well as being used to dump memory (cloning) from one instrument to another.

46882-225U 2-5

#### **GPIB** cable connection

Connection to other equipment which has a 24-way connector to IEEE Standard 488 is made using the rear panel IEEE 488-2 socket. For this purpose the GPIB cable assembly, available as an optional accessory (see Chap. 1 'Accessories'), may be used.

#### **GPIB** connector contact assignments

The contact assignments of the GPIB cable connector are as given in the table below and shown in Fig. 2-2.

Contact	Function	Contact	Function
1	Data I/O 1	13	Datal/O 5
2	Data I/O 2	14	Datal/O 6
3	Data I/O 3	15	Datal/O 7
4	Data I/O 4	16	Datal/O 8
5	EOI	17	REN
6	DAV	18	Pair with 6
7	NRFD	19	Pair with 7
8	NDAC	20	Pair with 8
9	IFC	21	Pair with 9
10	SRQ	22	Pair with 10
11	ATN	23	Pair with 11
12	Ground shield	24	Logic ground

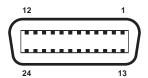


Fig. 2-2 GPIB connector contact assignments (viewed from rear of instrument)

#### **IEEE to IEC conversion**

An optional IEEE to IEC adapter is also available (see Chap. 1 'Versions, options and accessories') for interfacing with systems using a 25-way bus connector to IEC Recommendation 625. The method of use is shown in Fig. 2-3.

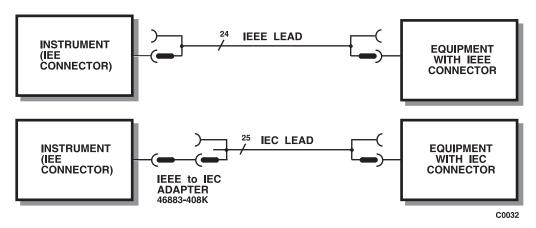


Fig. 2-3 IEEE to IEC conversion

#### Interface bus connection

The cables for the interface bus use special male-female connectors at both ends. This allows several connectors to be stacked one on top of another permitting several cables to be connected to the same source and secured by a lockscrew mechanism. Too large a stack, however, may form a cantilevered structure which might cause damage and should be avoided. The piggyback

2-6 46882-225U

arrangement permits star or linear interconnection between the devices with the restriction that the total cable length for the system must be:-

- (1) No greater than 20 m (65 ft).
- (2) No greater than 2 m (6 ft) times the total number of devices (including the controller) connected to the bus.

#### **RS-232** interface

The RS-232 interface built into the instrument enables the signal generator to be remotely controlled as well as being used to dump memory (cloning) from one instrument to another.

#### **RS-232** connector

The rear panel male D-type RS-232 connector is shown in Fig. 2-4.



Fig. 2-4 RS-232 connector contact assignments (viewed from rear of instrument)

The pin-outs for the 9-way RS-232 connector are shown below:

Contact		Signal
1	DCD	Data carrier detect
2	RXD	Receive data
3	TXD	Transmit data
4	DTR	Data terminal ready
5	SG	Signal ground
6	DSR	Data set ready
7	RTS	Request to send
8	CTS	Clear to send
9	RI	Ring indicator

The RS-232 interface can be connected to a personal computer's AT connector using a null-modem cable. A suitable cable is available from IFR - see 'Versions, options and accessories' in Chap. 1.

# **Rack mounting**

The instrument, which is normally supplied for bench mounting, may be mounted in a standard 19 inch rack (see Chap. 1 'Versions, options and accessories').

#### **CAUTION**

#### **Routine maintenance**

#### Safety testing and inspection

In the UK the 'Electricity at Work Regulations' (1989) section 4(2) places a requirement on the users of equipment to maintain it in a safe condition. The explanatory notes call for regular inspections and tests together with a need to keep records.

The following electrical tests and inspection information is provided for guidance purposes and involves the use of voltages and currents that can cause injury. It is important that these tests are only performed by competent personnel.

46882-225U 2-7

Prior to carrying out any inspection and tests the instruments must be disconnected from the mains supply and all external signal connections removed. All tests should include the instrument's own supply lead, all covers must be fitted and the supply switch must be in the 'ON' position.

The recommended inspection and tests fall into three categories and should be carried out in the following sequence:

- 1. Visual inspection
- 2. Earth bonding test
- 3. Insulation resistance test.

#### 1. Visual inspection

A visual inspection should be carried out on a periodic basis. This interval is dependant on the operating environment, maintenance and use, and should be assessed in accordance with guidelines issued by the Health and Safety Executive (HSE). As a guide, this equipment, when used indoors in a relatively clean environment, would be classified as 'low risk' equipment and hence should be subject to safety inspections on an annual basis. If the use of the equipment is contrary to the conditions specified, you should review the safety re-test interval.

As a guide, the visual inspection should include the following where appropriate:

Check that the equipment has been installed in accordance with the instructions provided (e.g. that ventilation is adequate, supply isolators are accessible, supply wiring is adequate and properly routed).

- The condition of the mains supply lead and supply connector(s).
- The correct rating and type of supply fuses.
- Security and condition of covers and handles.
- Check the presence and condition of all warning labels and markings and supplied safety information.
- Check the wiring in re-wireable plugs and appliance connectors.
- Check the cleanliness and condition of any ventilation fan filters.
- Check that the mains supply switch isolates the equipment from the supply.
- Check the supply indicator functions (if fitted).

If any defect is noted this should be rectified before proceeding with the following electrical tests.

#### 2. Earth bonding tests

Earth bonding tests should be carried out using a 25 A (12 V maximum open circuit voltage) DC source. Tests should be limited to a maximum duration of 5 seconds and have a pass limit of  $0.1~\Omega$  after allowing for the resistance of the supply lead. Exceeding the test duration can cause damage to the equipment. The tests should be carried out between the supply earth and exposed case metalwork, no attempt should be made to perform the tests on functional earths (e.g. signal carrying connector shells or screen connections) as this will result in damage to the equipment.

#### 3. Insulation tests

A 500 V DC test should be applied between the protective earth connection and combined live and neutral supply connections with the equipment supply switch in the 'on' position. It is advisable to make the live/neutral link on the appliance tester or its connector to avoid the possibility of returning the equipment to the user with the live and neutral poles linked with an ad-hoc strap. The test voltage should be applied for 5 seconds before taking the measurement.

IFR Ltd., employ reinforced insulation in the construction of their products and hence a minimum pass limit of 7 M $\Omega$  should be achieved during this test.

Where a DC power adapter is provided with the equipment the adapter must pass the 7 M $\Omega$  test limit.

We do not recommend dielectric flash testing during routine safety tests. Most portable appliance testers use AC for the dielectric strength test which can cause damage to the supply input filter capacitors.

2-8 46882-225U

#### 4. Rectification

It is recommended that the results of the above tests are recorded and checked during each repeat test. Significant differences between the previous readings and the measured values should be investigated.

If any failure is detected during the above visual inspection or tests, the instrument should be disabled and the fault should be rectified by an experienced Service Engineer who is familiar with the hazards involved in carrying out such repairs.

Safety critical components should only be replaced with equivalent parts, using techniques and procedures recommended by IFR Ltd.

The above information is provided for guidance only. IFR products are designed and constructed in accordance with International Safety Standards such that in the normal use they represent no hazard to the operator. IFR Ltd reserve the right to amend the above information in the course of continuing its commitment to product safety.

# Cleaning

Before commencing any cleaning, switch off the instrument and disconnect it from the supply. The exterior surface of the case may be cleaned using a soft cloth moistened in water. Do not use aerosol or liquid solvent cleaners.

# Cleaning the LCD window

To prevent damage to the LCD window, care should be taken not to scratch the surface during use and also when cleaning. The LCD window should be cleaned by wiping a slightly damp, soft, lint-free cloth gently over the surface

### **Putting into storage**

If the instrument is to be put into storage, ensure that the following conditions are maintained:

Temperature range:  $-40 \text{ to } +70^{\circ}\text{C}$ 

Humidity: Less than 93% at 40°C

46882-225U 2-9

# PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION

# Chapter 3 PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION

# **Contents**

List of fig

Introduction	3-2
Main screen operation	
Utility menu operation	
Menu grouping	
Family tree	
Memory operation	
• 1	
ures	
Fig. 3-1 Utility menu operation summary showing a modulation selection example	3-5
Fig. 3-2 Utility menu family tree	3-7

46882-225U 3-1

#### Introduction

This chapter is specifically for use by the experienced signal generator user and therefore the operation of the instrument is not explained in detail. Since the instrument has been designed to be easy to use, the experienced user may need only to refer to this chapter to efficiently use the instrument.

The operation of the instrument is based on using the main screen and using the menus. The main screen is used in association with six function keys while menu operation is entered using the [MENU] key. Four of the function keys [CARR FREQ], [RF LEVEL], [MOD] and [MOD SOURCE] enable you to set the basic parameters of a signal. The remaining two function keys [STO] and [RCL] control memory store and recall operations. The blue [MENU] key enables you to select utility menu operation which provides access to a wide range of utilities.

# Main screen operation

The main screen is displayed at switch-on and after one of the dark grey function keys has been pressed. Pressing a function key highlights the area of the screen appropriate to that key and the instrument awaits either parameter entry or menu operation.

Both the [MOD] and [MOD SOURCE] function keys operate in a cyclic fashion as shown by the arrows marked on the keys. Repeated pressing of the [MOD] key steps through each modulation of the currently selected modulation mode, together with full source information for that mode.

As each modulation mode is displayed, the signal source for that modulation can be selected. For internal sources, repeated pressing of the [MOD SOURCE] key steps through and selects each of the available waveforms. If the displayed modulation mode is external, repeated pressing of the key displays and selects each of the external types of coupling.

# **Utility menu operation**

The instrument provides a range of utilities for such applications as setting the GPIB address, adjusting the LCD contrast, poking the latches and selecting the modulation mode. Utility menu operation is summarized in Fig. 3-1 which uses a modulation selection example. This is intended to be opened out and used in conjunction with the explanatory text which follows.

The function keys are closely connected with the utility menus for greater efficiency of operation. This means that when you press a function key followed by the [MENU] key, those utilities associated with that function are called up for immediate use. Thus pressing [MOD][MENU] takes you to the modulation group of menus.

Within the menus, pressing [SELECT] will take you down the menu chain, pressing [MENU] will take you back up.

Moving between items on a menu is done by means of the [NEXT] and [PREV] keys.

Once you are familiar with the use of the utility menus, you can immediately call up commonly used menus by using the sequence:

[MENU] Utility number [ENTER]

To return to the main screen, press any one of the function keys.

With the main screen displayed, pressing [SELECT] will either display your last selected utility or, if you have just switched on, display the software status of the instrument.

3-2 46882-225U

# Menu grouping

To save you having to memorize specific utility numbers the utilities are split into the ten groups listed below:

Utility number	Utility group
01 - 09	FREQUENCY/SWEEP
10 - 19	RF LEVEL
20 - 29	MODULATION (Normal and FSK)
30 - 39	MODULATION SOURCE
40 - 49	MEMORY
50 - 59	SETUP
60 - 69	INFORMATION
70 - 79	DIAGNOSTICS
80 - 89	LOCK/UNLOCK
100 onwards	CALIBRATION

# Family tree

Menu operation is graphically presented in Fig. 3-2.

# **Memory operation**

During operation, either the current carrier frequency or the current instrument settings can be saved by means of the memory store [STO] key and recalled when required by means of the recall [RCL] key. The type of store is determined by the location number selected:

Carrier store	non-volatile	0 - 99
Full store	non-volatile	100 - 199
Full store	volatile	200 - 299

Note that the instrument factory settings can be recalled from memory location 999.

46882-225U 3-3

(19mm) from

0.75"

- - - -

#### Main screen

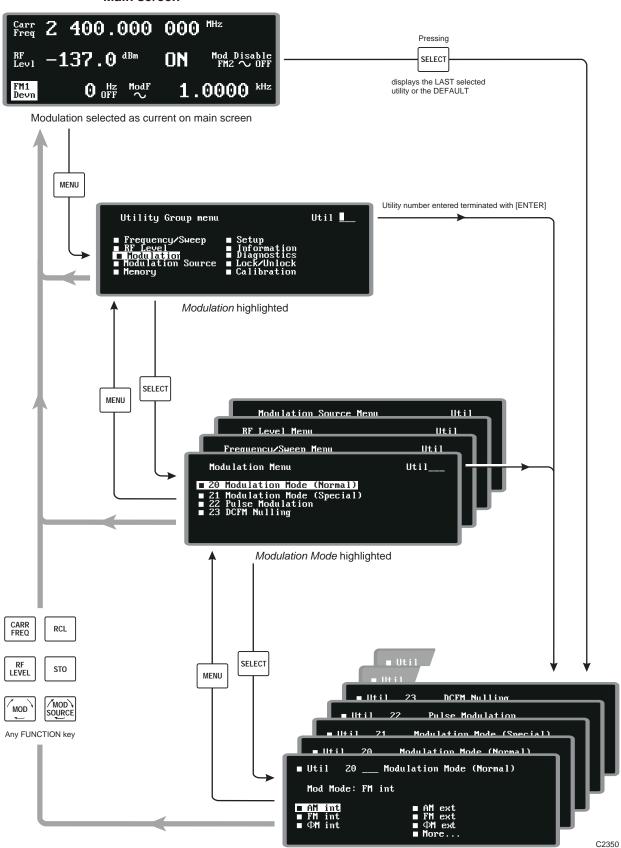


Fig. 3-1 Utility menu operation summary showing a modulation selection example

46882-225U 3-5

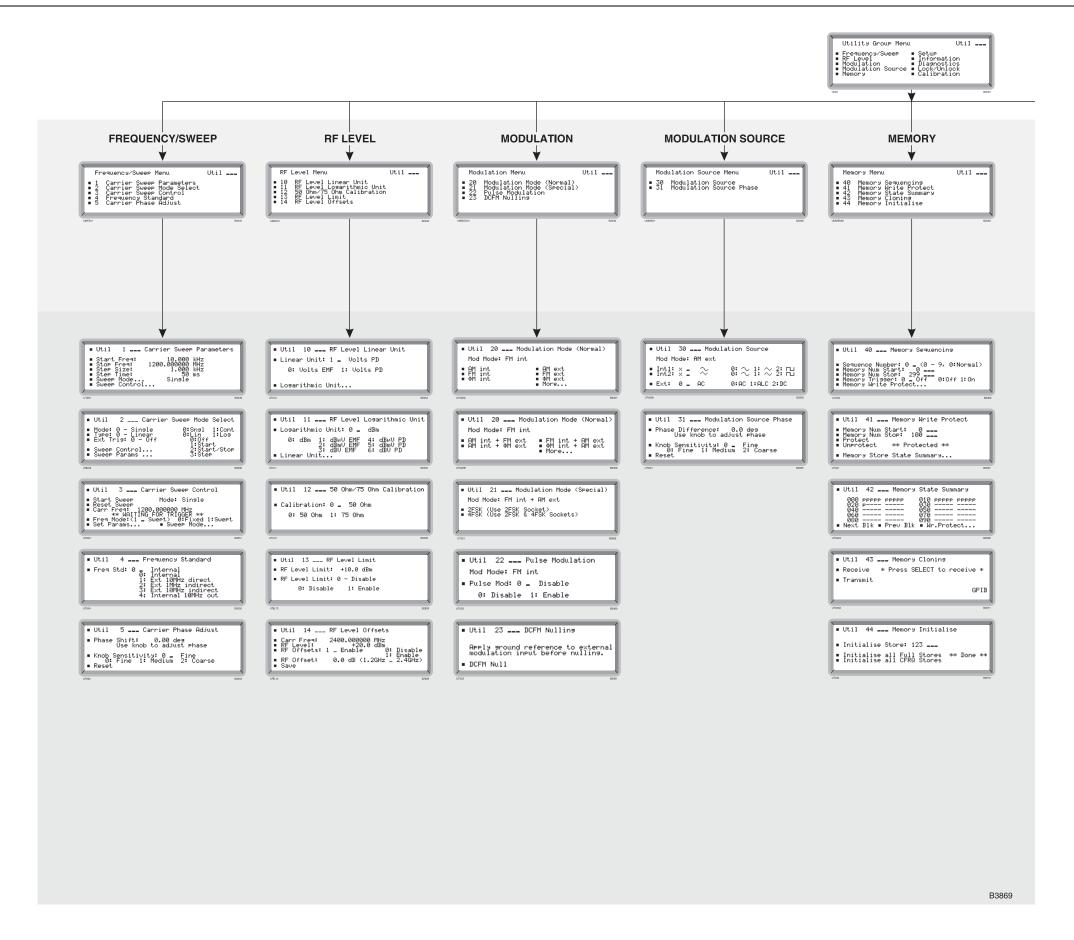


Fig. 3-2 Utility menu family tree

3-6 46882-225U

(19mm)

| 0

nhapto

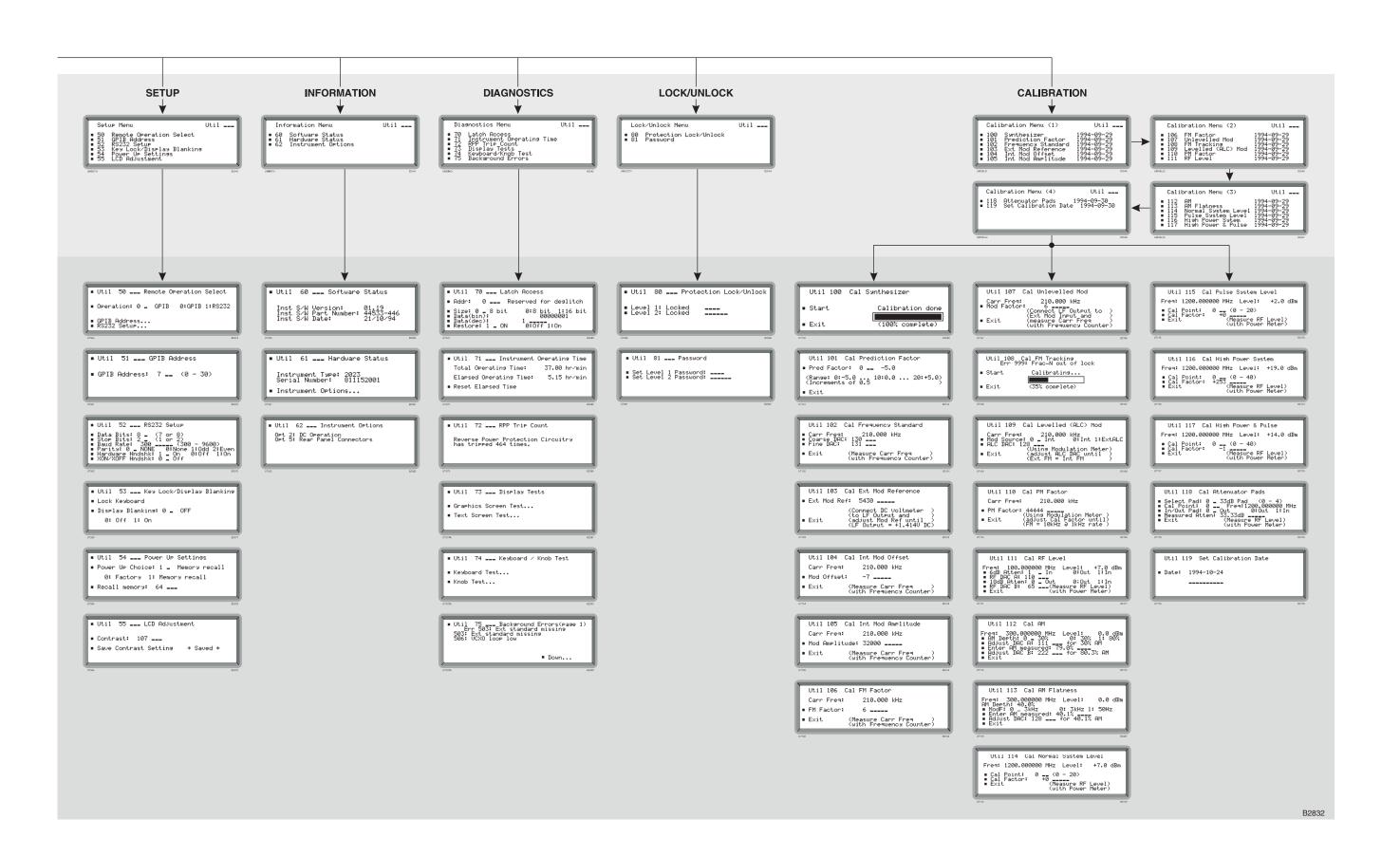


Fig. 3-2 Utility menu family tree

46882-225U 3-7

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION

Utility menu family tree

3-8 46882-225U

# Chapter 4 LOCAL OPERATION

# **Contents**

Front panel controls and connectors
Keyboard       4-4         Rear panel connectors       4-7         FIRST TIME USE       4-5         Switching on       4-5         Display       4-10         Selecting functions and keyboard entry       4-12         Carrier frequency       4-12         Modulation       4-12         Using Fevel       4-12         Modulation       4-12         Using the [û+10] and [0+10] keys       4-12         With the control knob       4-13         With steps       4-12         With steps       4-12         Using the utility menus       4-14         Menu conventions       4-14         Menu conventions       4-14         Selecting carrier frequency       4-16         Carrier on/off       4-16         Carrier on/off       4-16         Carrier sweep operation       4-16         Sweep mode       4-17         Sweep mode       4-17         Sweep parameters       4-16         Carrier phase adjustment       4-16         Selecting RF level       4-20         Choice of units       4-21         Attenuator hold       4-22         Reverse power pro
Rear panel connectors
FIRST TIME USE         4-5           Switching on         4-5           Display         4-10           Selecting functions and keyboard entry         4-12           Carrier frequency         4-12           RF level         4-12           Modulation         4-12           Using [NEXT] and [PREV] to select a function         4-12           Using the [0+10] and [0+10] keys         4-12           With the control knob         4-13           With steps         4-14           Using the utility menus         4-14           Menu conventions         4-15           DETAILED OPERATION         4-16           Selecting carrier frequency         4-16           Carrier on/off         4-16           Carrier sweep operation         4-16           Sweep mode         4-17           Sweep mode         4-17           Sweep control         4-18           Carrier preguency         4-16           Carrier preguency         4-16           Carrier preguency         4-16           Sweep parameters         4-16           Sweep control         4-17           Sweep control         4-18           Carrier weep operation
Switching on       4-5         Display       4-16         Selecting functions and keyboard entry       4-12         Carrier frequency       4-12         RF level       4-12         Modulation       4-12         Using (NEXT) and [PREV] to select a function       4-12         Using the [û+10] and [0×10] keys       4-12         With the control knob       4-13         With steps       4-12         Using the utility menus       4-14         Menu conventions       4-15         DETAILED OPERATION       4-16         Selecting carrier frequency       4-16         Carrier sweep operation       4-16         Sweep parameters       4-16         Sweep mode       4-17         Sweep mode       4-17         Sweep control       4-18         Carrier phase adjustment       4-18         Selecting RF level       4-20         Choice of units       4-20         Attenuator hold       4-20         RF level linear units       4-21         Modulation modes       4-22         Mode selection       4-22         Modulation selection - external       4-22         Modulation selection
Switching on       4-5         Display       4-16         Selecting functions and keyboard entry       4-12         Carrier frequency       4-12         RF level       4-12         Modulation       4-12         Using (NEXT) and [PREV] to select a function       4-12         Using the [û+10] and [0×10] keys       4-12         With the control knob       4-13         With steps       4-12         Using the utility menus       4-14         Menu conventions       4-15         DETAILED OPERATION       4-16         Selecting carrier frequency       4-16         Carrier sweep operation       4-16         Sweep parameters       4-16         Sweep mode       4-17         Sweep mode       4-17         Sweep control       4-18         Carrier phase adjustment       4-18         Selecting RF level       4-20         Choice of units       4-20         Attenuator hold       4-20         RF level linear units       4-21         Modulation modes       4-22         Mode selection       4-22         Modulation selection - external       4-22         Modulation selection
Display       4-16         Selecting functions and keyboard entry       4-12         Carrier frequency       4-12         RF level       4-12         Modulation       4-12         Using [NEXT] and [PREV] to select a function       4-12         Using the [û+10] and [0×10] keys       4-12         With the control knob       4-13         With steps       4-12         Using the utility menus       4-14         Menu conventions       4-15         DETAILED OPERATION       4-16         Selecting carrier frequency       4-16         Carrier sweep operation       4-16         Sweep parameters       4-16         Sweep mode       4-16         Sweep mode       4-16         Sweep control       4-18         Carrier phase adjustment       4-18         Selecting RF level       4-20         Choice of units       4-20         Attenuator hold       4-20         RF level linear units       4-21         RF level linear units       4-21         Modulation modes       4-22         Mode selection       4-22         Modulation external       4-22         Modulation external
Selecting functions and keyboard entry       4-12         Carrier frequency       4-11         RF level       4-12         Modulation       4-12         Using [NEXT] and [PREV] to select a function       4-12         Using the [Û±10] and [Ū±10] keys       4-12         With the control knob       4-13         With steps       4-14         Using the utility menus       4-14         Menu conventions       4-15         DETAILED OPERATION       4-16         Selecting carrier frequency       4-16         Carrier on/off       4-16         Carrier sweep operation       4-16         Sweep parameters       4-16         Sweep pontrol       4-17         Sweep pontrol       4-18         Carrier phase adjustment       4-19         Selecting RF level       4-20         Choice of units       4-20         Attenuator hold       4-20         Reverse power protection       4-21         Reverse power protection       4-22         Modulation modes       4-22         Mode selection       4-22         Mode selection - internal       4-22         Mode selection - external       4-25      <
Carrier frequency       4-12         RF level       4-11         Modulation       4-12         Using [NEXT] and [PREV] to select a function       4-12         Using the [↑+10] and [↓×10] keys       4-12         With the control knob       4-12         With steps.       4-13         Using the utility menus       4-14         Menu conventions       4-14         Menu conventions       4-16         DETAILED OPERATION       4-16         Carrier frequency       4-16         Carrier sweep operation       4-16         Sweep parameters       4-16         Sweep mode       4-17         Sweep control       4-18         Carrier phase adjustment       4-18         Carrier phase adjustment       4-19         Selecting RF level       4-20         Choice of units       4-20         Attenuator hold       4-20         RF level linear units       4-21         Mode selection       4-22         Modulation modes       4-22         Mode selection       4-22         Source selection - internal       4-22         Modulation eable/disable       4-22         Modulation selection<
RF level
Modulation $4-12$ Using [NEXT] and [PREV] to select a function $4-12$ Using the $[\hat{T}+10]$ and $[\mathbb{P}X+10]$ keys $4-12$ With the control knob $4-12$ With steps $4-12$ Using the utility menus $4-14$ Menu conventions $4-12$ DETAILED OPERATION $4-12$ Selecting carrier frequency $4-12$ Carrier on/off $4-12$ Carrier sweep operation $4-12$ Sweep parameters $4-12$ Sweep mode $4-12$ Sweep mode $4-12$ Carrier phase adjustment $4-12$ Choice of units $4-12$ Attenuator hold $4-20$ Reverse power protection $4-20$ Reverse power protection $4-20$ RF level logarithmic units $4-20$ Modulation modes $4-20$ Mode selection $4-20$ Modulation eselection - external $4-20$ Modulation enable/disable $4-20$ Modulation selection - external $4-20$ Modulation selection $4-20$ Modulation selection $4-20$ Amplitude modulation selection $4-20$ Frequency modulation selection $4-20$ Amplitude modulation selection $4-20$
Using [NEXT] and [PREV] to select a function $4-12$ Using the $[\hat{T}+10]$ and $[\bar{V}\times 10]$ keys $4-12$ With the control knob $4-12$ With steps $4-12$ Using the utility menus $4-12$ Menu conventions $4-12$ DETAILED OPERATION $4-16$ Selecting carrier frequency $4-16$ Carrier on/off $4-16$ Carrier sweep operation $4-16$ Sweep parameters $4-16$ Sweep mode $4-17$ Sweep control $4-18$ Carrier phase adjustment $4-18$ Selecting RF level $4-20$ Choice of units $4-20$ Attenuator hold $4-20$ Reverse power protection $4-20$ RF level linear units $4-20$ Modulation modes $4-20$ Mode selection $4-20$ Mode selection $4-20$ Mode selection - internal $4-20$ Modulation enable/disable $4-20$ Modulation source phase adjustment $4-20$ Modulation selection - external $4-20$ Modulation selection $4-20$ Modulation selection $4-20$ Amplitude modulation selection $4-20$ Frequency modulation selection $4-20$ Frequency modulation selection $4-20$ Frequency modulation selection $4-20$
Using the [ $\hat{\Omega}$ ÷10] and [ $\bar{\mathbb{Q}}$ ×10] keys       4-12         With the control knob       4-13         With steps       4-15         Using the utility menus       4-14         Menu conventions       4-16         DETAILED OPERATION       4-16         Selecting carrier frequency       4-16         Carrier on/off       4-16         Carrier sweep operation       4-16         Sweep parameters       4-16         Sweep mode       4-17         Sweep control       4-18         Carrier phase adjustment       4-18         Selecting RF level       4-20         Choice of units       4-20         Attenuator hold       4-20         Reverse power protection       4-20         RF level linear units       4-21         Modulation modes       4-22         Modulation modes       4-22         Modulation eable/disable       4-22         Modulation eable/disable       4-26         Modulation selection       4-26         Modulation selection       4-26         Modulation selection       4-26         Frequency modulation selection       4-26         Frequency modulation selection       4-26
With steps.       .4-12         With steps.       .4-13         Using the utility menus       .4-14         Menu conventions       .4-15         DETAILED OPERATION       .4-16         Selecting carrier frequency       .4-16         Carrier on/off       .4-16         Carrier sweep operation       .4-16         Sweep parameters       .4-16         Sweep mode       .4-17         Sweep control       .4-18         Carrier phase adjustment       .4-18         Selecting RF level       .4-20         Choice of units       .4-20         Attenuator hold       .4-20         Reverse power protection       .4-20         RF level linear units       .4-21         RF level logarithmic units       .4-22         Modulation modes       .4-22         Mode selection       .4-22         Source selection - internal       .4-25         Modulation enable/disable       .4-26         Modulation source phase adjustment       .4-26         Modulation selection       .4-27         Frequency modulation selection       .4-27         Frequency modulation selection       .4-28
With steps       4-12         Using the utility menus       4-14         Menu conventions       4-15         DETAILED OPERATION       4-16         Selecting carrier frequency       4-16         Carrier on/off       4-16         Carrier sweep operation       4-16         Sweep parameters       4-16         Sweep mode       4-17         Sweep control       4-18         Carrier phase adjustment       4-18         Selecting RF level       4-20         Choice of units       4-20         Attenuator hold       4-20         Reverse power protection       4-20         RF level linear units       4-21         RF level logarithmic units       4-22         Modulation modes       4-22         Mode selection       4-25         Mode selection - external       4-25         Modulation enable/disable       4-26         Modulation source phase adjustment       4-26         Modulation selection       4-27         Frequency modulation selection       4-27         Frequency modulation selection       4-28
Using the utility menus       4-14         Menu conventions       4-15         DETAILED OPERATION       4-16         Selecting carrier frequency       4-16         Carrier on/off       4-16         Carrier sweep operation       4-16         Sweep parameters       4-16         Sweep mode       4-17         Sweep control       4-18         Carrier phase adjustment       4-18         Selecting RF level       4-20         Choice of units       4-20         Attenuator hold       4-20         Reverse power protection       4-20         RF level linear units       4-21         RF level logarithmic units       4-22         Modulation modes       4-22         Mode selection       4-23         Source selection - internal       4-25         Source selection - external       4-25         Modulation enable/disable       4-26         Modulation selection       4-27         Amplitude modulation selection       4-27         Frequency modulation selection       4-28
Menu conventions       4-15         DETAILED OPERATION       4-16         Selecting carrier frequency       4-16         Carrier on/off       4-16         Sweep parameters       4-16         Sweep parameters       4-16         Sweep mode       4-17         Sweep control       4-18         Carrier phase adjustment       4-18         Selecting RF level       4-20         Choice of units       4-20         Attenuator hold       4-20         Reverse power protection       4-20         RF level linear units       4-21         RF level logarithmic units       4-22         Modulation modes       4-23         Mode selection       4-23         Source selection - internal       4-25         Source selection - external       4-26         Modulation enable/disable       4-26         Modulation source phase adjustment       4-26         Modulation selection       4-27         Frequency modulation selection       4-27         Frequency modulation selection       4-28
Selecting carrier frequency       4-16         Carrier on/off       4-16         Carrier sweep operation       4-16         Sweep parameters       4-16         Sweep mode       4-17         Sweep control       4-18         Carrier phase adjustment       4-18         Selecting RF level       4-20         Choice of units       4-20         Attenuator hold       4-20         Reverse power protection       4-20         RF level linear units       4-21         RF level logarithmic units       4-21         Modulation modes       4-22         Mode selection       4-22         Mode selection - internal       4-23         Source selection - external       4-24         Modulation enable/disable       4-26         Modulation selection       4-26         Modulation selection       4-27         Amplitude modulation selection       4-27         Frequency modulation selection       4-28
Selecting carrier frequency       4-16         Carrier on/off       4-16         Carrier sweep operation       4-16         Sweep parameters       4-16         Sweep mode       4-17         Sweep control       4-18         Carrier phase adjustment       4-18         Selecting RF level       4-20         Choice of units       4-20         Attenuator hold       4-20         Reverse power protection       4-20         RF level linear units       4-21         RF level logarithmic units       4-21         Modulation modes       4-22         Mode selection       4-22         Mode selection - internal       4-23         Source selection - external       4-24         Modulation enable/disable       4-26         Modulation selection       4-26         Modulation selection       4-27         Amplitude modulation selection       4-27         Frequency modulation selection       4-28
Carrier on/off       4-16         Carrier sweep operation       4-16         Sweep parameters       4-16         Sweep mode       4-17         Sweep control       4-18         Carrier phase adjustment       4-19         Selecting RF level       4-20         Choice of units       4-20         Attenuator hold       4-20         Reverse power protection       4-20         RF level linear units       4-21         RF level logarithmic units       4-22         Modulation modes       4-23         Mode selection       4-23         Source selection - internal       4-24         Source selection - external       4-25         Modulation enable/disable       4-26         Modulation selection       4-26         Modulation selection       4-26         Amplitude modulation selection       4-27         Amplitude modulation selection       4-28         Frequency modulation selection       4-28
Carrier sweep operation       4-16         Sweep parameters       4-16         Sweep mode       4-17         Sweep control       4-18         Carrier phase adjustment       4-19         Selecting RF level       4-20         Choice of units       4-20         Attenuator hold       4-20         Reverse power protection       4-20         RF level linear units       4-21         RF level logarithmic units       4-22         Modulation modes       4-23         Mode selection       4-23         Source selection - internal       4-24         Source selection - external       4-25         Modulation enable/disable       4-26         Modulation selection       4-26         Modulation selection       4-27         Amplitude modulation selection       4-27         Frequency modulation selection       4-28
Sweep parameters       4-16         Sweep mode       4-17         Sweep control       4-18         Carrier phase adjustment       4-19         Selecting RF level       4-20         Choice of units       4-20         Attenuator hold       4-20         Reverse power protection       4-20         RF level linear units       4-21         RF level logarithmic units       4-22         Modulation modes       4-23         Mode selection       4-23         Source selection - internal       4-24         Source selection - external       4-25         Modulation enable/disable       4-26         Modulation source phase adjustment       4-26         Modulation selection       4-27         Amplitude modulation selection       4-27         Frequency modulation selection       4-28
Sweep mode       4-17         Sweep control       4-18         Carrier phase adjustment       4-19         Selecting RF level       4-20         Choice of units       4-20         Attenuator hold       4-20         Reverse power protection       4-20         RF level linear units       4-21         RF level logarithmic units       4-22         Modulation modes       4-23         Mode selection       4-23         Source selection - internal       4-24         Source selection - external       4-25         Modulation enable/disable       4-26         Modulation source phase adjustment       4-26         Modulation selection       4-27         Amplitude modulation selection       4-27         Frequency modulation selection       4-28
Sweep control.       4-18         Carrier phase adjustment       4-19         Selecting RF level       4-20         Choice of units       4-20         Attenuator hold       4-20         Reverse power protection       4-20         RF level linear units       4-21         RF level logarithmic units       4-22         Modulation modes       4-23         Mode selection       4-23         Source selection - internal       4-25         Source selection - external       4-25         Modulation enable/disable       4-26         Modulation source phase adjustment       4-26         Modulation selection       4-27         Amplitude modulation selection       4-27         Frequency modulation selection       4-28
Carrier phase adjustment       4-19         Selecting RF level       4-20         Choice of units       4-20         Attenuator hold       4-20         Reverse power protection       4-20         RF level linear units       4-21         RF level logarithmic units       4-22         Modulation modes       4-23         Mode selection       4-23         Source selection - internal       4-24         Source selection - external       4-25         Modulation enable/disable       4-26         Modulation source phase adjustment       4-26         Modulation selection       4-26         Amplitude modulation selection       4-27         Frequency modulation selection       4-28
Selecting RF level       4-20         Choice of units       4-20         Attenuator hold       4-20         Reverse power protection       4-20         RF level linear units       4-21         RF level logarithmic units       4-22         Modulation modes       4-23         Mode selection       4-23         Source selection - internal       4-24         Source selection - external       4-25         Modulation enable/disable       4-26         Modulation source phase adjustment       4-26         Modulation selection       4-27         Amplitude modulation selection       4-27         Frequency modulation selection       4-28
Choice of units 4-20 Attenuator hold 4-20 Reverse power protection 4-20 RF level linear units 4-21 RF level logarithmic units 4-22 Modulation modes 4-23 Mode selection 4-23 Source selection - internal 4-24 Source selection - external 4-25 Modulation source phase adjustment 4-26 Modulation selection 4-26 Modulation selection 4-27 Amplitude modulation selection 4-27 Frequency modulation selection 4-28
Attenuator hold 4-20 Reverse power protection 4-20 RF level linear units 4-21 RF level logarithmic units 4-22 Modulation modes 4-23 Mode selection 4-23 Source selection - internal 4-24 Source selection - external 4-25 Modulation source phase adjustment 4-26 Modulation selection 4-26 Modulation selection 4-27 Amplitude modulation selection 4-28 Frequency modulation selection 4-28
Reverse power protection
RF level linear units 4-21 RF level logarithmic units 4-22 Modulation modes 4-23 Mode selection 4-23 Source selection - internal 4-24 Source selection - external 4-25 Modulation enable/disable 4-26 Modulation source phase adjustment 4-26 Modulation selection 4-27 Amplitude modulation selection 4-27 Frequency modulation selection 4-28
RF level logarithmic units
Modulation modes4-23Mode selection4-23Source selection - internal4-24Source selection - external4-25Modulation enable/disable4-26Modulation source phase adjustment4-26Modulation selection4-27Amplitude modulation selection4-27Frequency modulation selection4-28
Mode selection4-23Source selection - internal4-24Source selection - external4-25Modulation enable/disable4-26Modulation source phase adjustment4-26Modulation selection4-27Amplitude modulation selection4-27Frequency modulation selection4-28
Source selection - internal
Modulation enable/disable4-26Modulation source phase adjustment4-26Modulation selection4-27Amplitude modulation selection4-27Frequency modulation selection4-28
Modulation source phase adjustment4-26Modulation selection4-27Amplitude modulation selection4-27Frequency modulation selection4-28
Modulation selection
Amplitude modulation selection
Frequency modulation selection4-28
Phase modulation selection
Pulse modulation selection4-30
FSK selection4-31
Default settings4-32
MEMORY4-33
Memory stores4-33
Memory recall
Recalling data
Recalling default settings
Memory sequencing4-35
Memory write protection4-36

	Memory state summary	
	Memory cloning	4-38
	GENERAL	4-39
	Frequency standard selection	4-39
	$50 \Omega/75 \Omega$ impedance selection	
	RF level limit	
	RF level offsets	4-42
	DCFM nulling	
	Keyboard locking and display blanking	
	Power-up options	
	Adjusting the display	
	Software information	
	Hardware information	
	Instrument options	
	Protection locking and unlocking.	
	Changing the password	
	ERROR MESSAGES	
	Error handling	
	Background errors:	
	Foreground errors:	
	Error message priority:	
	GPIB errors	4-51
List o	of tables	
	Table 4-1 Instrument default settings	4 22
	Table 4-1 Histument default settings	
	Table 4-3 Foreground errors (0 - 399)	
	Table 4-4 GPIB errors (400 - 499)	
	14010   1 0112 011010 (100 100)	
List o	of figures	
	Fig. 4-1 2024 front panel showing SUPPLY switch and connectors	4.4
	Fig. 4-1 2024 front panel showing SUPPLY switch and connectors	
	Fig. 4-3 Instrument rear panel showing connectors	
	Fig. 4-4 2023 main screen in normal operation showing default display	
	Fig. 4-5 2024 main screen in normal operation showing default display	
	Fig. 4-6 Division of the display into fields	
	Fig. 4-7 Step setting display showing default settings	
	Fig. 4-8 Utility group menu	
	Fig. 4-9 Frequency/sweep menu	
	Fig. 4-10 Frequency standard menu	
	Fig. 4-11 Carrier sweep parameters menu	
	Fig. 4-12 Carrier sweep mode select menu	
	Fig. 4-13 Carrier sweep control menu (shown with sweep enabled)	
	Fig. 4-14 Carrier phase adjust menu	4-19
	Fig. 4-15 RPP tripped display	4-20
	Fig. 4-16 RF level linear units menu	4-21
	Fig. 4-17 RF level logarithmic units menu	4-22
	Fig. 4-18 Modulation mode menu - first page	
	Fig. 4-19 Modulation mode menu - second page	
	Fig. 4-20 Modulation source menu	
	Fig. 4-21 Modulation source menu - shown with an external source selected	
	Fig. 4-22 Modulation source phase menu	
	Fig. 4-23 Pulse modulation menu	
	Fig. 4-24 Modulation mode (special) menu	
	Fig. 4-25 Memory sequencing menu	
	Fig. 4-26 Memory write protection menu (showing stores 0 to 100 protected)	4-36

Fig. 4-2/ Memory state summary (showing carrier stores 0 to 20 protected)	4-3/
Fig. 4-28 Memory cloning menu (showing instrument ready to receive via the GPIB)	4-38
Fig. 4-29 Frequency standard menu	4-39
Fig. 4-30 50 $\Omega/75$ $\Omega$ calibration menu	4-40
Fig. 4-31 RF level limit menu	4-41
Fig. 4-32 RF level offsets menu	4-42
Fig. 4-33 DCFM nulling display	4-43
Fig. 4-34 Key lock/display blanking menu	4-44
Fig. 4-35 Power-up settings menu	4-45
Fig. 4-36 LCD adjustment menu (with the setting saved for automatic recall at switch-	on)4-46
Fig. 4-37 Software status	4-47
Fig. 4-38 Hardware status	4-47
Fig. 4-39 Instrument options display	4-48
Fig. 4-40 Protection locking and unlocking	4-49
Fig. 4-41 Password selection menu	
Fig. 4-42 Background errors display	4-51

## Introduction

All operations of the signal generator are carried out from the front panel keyboard which is colour-coded. An extensive suite of utility menus make this a very versatile instrument. The built-in GPIB and RS-232 interfaces enable the instrument to be remotely operated.

# Front panel controls and connectors

Parameters are selected by means of keys which have their functions printed on them, a numerical key pad and a rotary control knob. The numerical keys are used to set parameters to specific values which can also be varied in steps of any size by using the  $[\uparrow]\div 10$  and  $[\downarrow]\times 10$  keys or the rotary control knob.

#### **Connectors**

The front panel connectors are shown in Fig. 4-1 below:

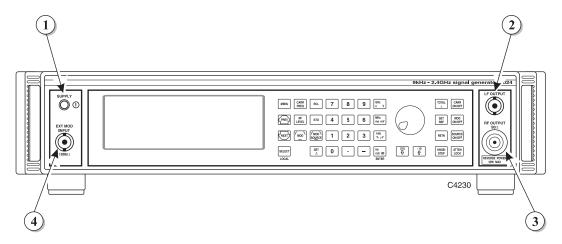


Fig. 4-1 2024 front panel showing SUPPLY switch and connectors

(1)	SUPPLY switch	Switches the supply on and off using a press on, press off action.
(2)	LF OUTPUT	$600~\Omega$ BNC socket which monitors the modulation oscillator.
		With Option 5 this socket is fitted on the rear panel.
(3)	RF OUTPUT	$50\Omega$ N-type socket. Protected against the application of reverse power of up to 50 W.
		With Option 5 this socket is fitted on the rear panel.
(4)	EXT MOD INPUT	$100~\mbox{k}\Omega$ BNC socket. An independent input which allows an external modulating signal to be applied.
		With Option 5 this socket is fitted on the rear panel.

## Keyboard

The keyboard is functionally colour-coded. The keys for the primary functions of carrier frequency, level and modulation are dark grey. Secondary functions such as unit selection and on/off keys are medium grey. Menu selection, which plays such a prominent part in this instrument, has keys which are coloured blue.

4-4 46882-225U

(12)(13)(14) (15) (11) (5) (10) (8) CARR ON/OFF  $\mathop{\rm TOTAL}_{\Delta}$ GHz MENU 9 MHz ms mV MOD ON/OFF RF LEVEL PREV STO 6 kHz % μV MOD SOURCE MOD NEXT RETN Hz rad dB ÷10  $\mathop{\rm SET}_\Delta$ KNOB/ STEP ATTEN LOCK SELECT LOCAL ENTER 23) 22) 24) 16) C2314 (25) (21) (20) (19) **(18) (17)** 

The front panel keyboard is shown in Fig. 4-2 below:

Fig. 4-2 Instrument front panel showing keyboard

(5)	[PREV]	A key used to scrolls backwards through a menu list or the function list.
	[NEXT]	A menu key used to scroll forwards through a menu list or the function list.
(6)	[MENU]	Selects the main utility menu, or within utility menus steps back up through the menus.
(7)	[CARR FREQ]	Selects carrier frequency as the current function and causes the main screen to be displayed.
(8)	[RF LEVEL]	Selects RF level as the current function and causes the main screen to be displayed.
(9)	[RCL]	Used to recall a previously stored instrument setting from memory.
(10)	Numerical key pad	For entering the value of a selected parameter. Minus sign and decimal point are included.
(11)	Control knob	When enabled by the [KNOB/STEP] key, adjusts the value of the selected parameter.
(12)	$[TOTAL \Delta]$	While the key is held down, displays the total shift from the keyed-in value.
(13)	[SOURCE ON/OFF]	Switches the current modulation source on and off.
(14)	[CARR ON/OFF]	Switches the carrier output on and off.
(15)	[MOD ON/OFF]	Switches ALL modulation on and off.
(16)	[ATTEN LOCK]	Holds the attenuator at the current setting with <i>Atten Lock</i> displayed. Allows the RF level to be decreased by a further 10 dB without the step attenuator operating.
(17)	[RETN]	After using the $[\hat{1}]$ or $[\mathbb{Q}] \times 10$ keys or the control knob returns the setting of the function to the last keyed-in value.
(18)	[KNOB/STEP]	Switches between enabling the control knob and enabling the

46882-225U 4-5

step operation.

(19)	[SET REF]	Transfers the current value as the keyed-in setting.
(20)	[û÷10]	When KNOB is enabled, increases the knob resolution by a factor of 10.
		When STEP is enabled, increments the current function by one step.
	[∜×10]	When KNOB is enabled, decreases the knob resolution by a factor of 10.
		When STEP is enabled, decrements the current function by one step.
(21)	[ENTER]/Units keys	Determine the units of the set parameters and also used to terminate a numerical entry.
(22)	[MOD SOURCE]	Selects modulation source as the current function and causes the main screen to be displayed.
		For internal modulation repetitive pressing of this key cycles through the currently selected modulation sources while displaying the appropriate wave shape on the screen.
		For external modulation it cycles through the currently selected external coupling modes.
(23)	[SET Δ]	Press to obtain the step setting display. To change the step size, press the relevant function key.
(24)	[STO]	Used to store the current instrument settings in memory.
(25)	[MOD]	Selects modulation as the current function and causes the main screen to be displayed. Repetitive pressing of this key cycles through each of the modulations of the current mode together with their source values.
(26)	[SELECT]	Selects an item highlighted on a utility menu.
		With the main screen displayed selects the last utility accessed.
		After power-up causes the software status to be displayed.
	[LOCAL]	Transfers control from the GPIB to the front panel (providing local lockout not asserted).

4-6 46882-225U

# **Rear panel connectors**

The rear panel connectors are shown in Fig. 4-3 below.

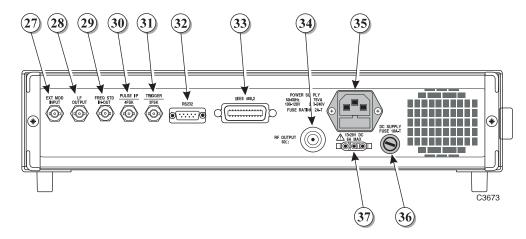


Fig. 4-3 Instrument rear panel showing connectors

(27)	EXT MOD INPUT (optional)	An Option 5 BNC socket which allows an external modulating signal to be applied. When fitted, replaces the front panel socket.
(28)	LF OUTPUT (optional)	An Option 5 BNC socket which monitors the modulation oscillator. When fitted, replaces the front panel socket.
(29)	FREQ STD IN-OUT	BNC socket for the input of external standard frequencies of either 1 MHz or 10 MHz. Can also supply a 10 MHz internal standard output.
(30)	PULSE I/P 4FSK	$10~k\Omega$ BNC socket which accepts a pulsed input. Also used as one logic input (the other is the TRIGGER input) for 4FSK modulation.
(31)	TRIGGER 2FSK	BNC socket which has three uses; in priority order these are: FSK logic input Memory sequencing Sweep trigger
(32)	RS232	9-way RS-232 connector for remote control of the instrument. For contact allocation see Chap. 2.
(33)	IEEE 488.2	24-pin socket accepts the standard GPIB connector to allow remote control of the instrument. For contact allocation see Chap. 2.
(34)	RF OUTPUT (optional)	An Option 5 50 $\Omega$ N-type socket. When fitted, replaces the front panel socket.
(35)	POWER SUPPLY	3-pin plug integral with fuse holder. Mates with AC supply lead socket.
(36)	DC SUPPLY FUSE (optional)	When Option 2 fitted, fuses the DC input socket.
(37)	DC input (optional)	When Option 2 fitted, the socket allows operation from an external 11 to 32 V DC source. For contact polarity see Chap. 2.

4-8 46882-225U

# FIRST TIME USE

First time users can quickly become familiar with the principles of control and display by carrying out the following exercise, which demonstrates how to set up a typical basic signal having the following parameters:

Carrier frequency: 100 MHz, Output level: 10 dBm,

Frequency modulation: 100 kHz deviation at 500 Hz mod.

# Switching on

Before switching the instrument on, check that the power supply is connected and ensure that no external signal sources are connected.

Switch on by means of the SUPPLY switch and check that the display is similar to that shown in Fig. 4-4 or Fig. 4-5. This shows the main screen as it appears during normal operation.

If the default display shown in Fig. 4-4 or Fig. 4-5 is not obtained, a previous user may have set the instrument to switch on with one of the user memories recalled, rather than using the default factory settings.

To reset to the factory settings press the [RCL] hard key. RCL appears highlighted at the top right of the screen with the cursor blinking awaiting your entry. Enter 999 on the keyboard and press [ENTER]. (Note that any one of the units keys can be used to perform the [ENTER] function.) The *RESET* annunciator is shown and the factory settings are now recalled from memory location 999 and displayed on the screen.



Fig. 4-4 2023 main screen in normal operation showing default display

```
Carr 2 400.000 000 MHz

RF _{\text{Levl}} -140.0 dBm on Mod Disable _{\text{EM2}} OFF

FM1 _{\text{Devn}} ModF 1.0000 kHz
```

Fig. 4-5 2024 main screen in normal operation showing default display

# **Display**

Before entering any parameters it will be found useful to look at the effect that pressing various keys has on the display. The display is divided into a number of fields as shown in Fig. 4-6.

## Carrier frequency field

When you press [CARR FREQ] it causes *Carr Freq* to be highlighted and your data entry is recognised as a frequency setting. *Ext* is displayed when the instrument is locked to an external standard.

#### Memory field

When you press the [STO] or [RCL] key it causes *STO* or *RCL* to be highlighted respectively. Your data entry is recognized as a memory location number. The type of recall, *FREQ*, *FULL* or *RAM* (or sequence number for memory sequencing) is additionally shown.

#### Error message field

Error messages are displayed when, for example, you exceed a parameter limit. A list of error messages is given at the end of this Chapter.

#### RF level field

When you press [RF LEVEL] it causes *RF Level* to be highlighted and your data entry is recognized as a level setting. Units and unit type are displayed together with the carrier *ON* or *OFF* state. When selected, *Atten Lock* is displayed unless overwritten by *Offs* when an RF level offset has been enabled.

#### **Modulation field**

When you press [MOD] it causes the currently selected type of modulation to be highlighted and your data entry is recognized as a modulation depth or deviation setting. Modulation *ON* or *OFF* is also shown.

### **Modulation source field**

When you press [MOD SOURCE] it causes the currently selected internal modulation source or external coupling to be highlighted. For an internal source a sine, triangle or square wave symbol is shown. Your data entry is recognized as a modulating frequency. For an external source AC, DC or ALC coupling is shown.

When the instrument is operating under remote control *REM* is displayed.

#### Modulation summary field

In this field are shown your other selected modulation sources. All your settings: types of modulation, waveforms, current *ON* or *OFF* states as well as modulation enabled or disabled are shown.

4-10 46882-225U

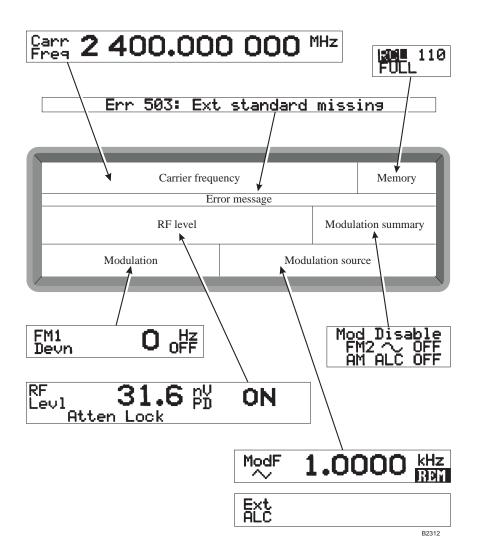


Fig. 4-6 Division of the display into fields

# Selecting functions and keyboard entry

Whenever one of the main functions - carrier frequency, RF level, modulation, modulation source - is highlighted on the main screen, making any terminated numerical entry will be accepted as being a changed parameter for that function. This enables you to enter, for example, a sequence of carrier frequencies without having to re-press the [CARR FREQ] function key for each entry.

## **Carrier frequency**

- (1) Press [CARR FREQ] to select carrier frequency as the current function. *Carr Freq:* is highlighted on the screen.
- (2) Using the numerical key pad, enter 100 MHz by entering 100 on the key pad and terminate with [MHz]. Observe that the *Carr Freq:* display changes to 100.000 000 MHz.

If you make an error when keying in, press the function key again and key in the correct value. If this causes an error message (e.g. *Err 100: Carrier limit*) to be displayed, it can be cancelled by a correct entry (e.g. by entering a value which is within limits).

## **RF** level

- (3) Press [RF LEVEL] to select RF level as the current function. *RF Levl:* is now highlighted on the screen.
- (4) Using the numerical key pad, enter 10 dBm by entering 10 on the key pad and terminate with [dB]. Observe that the *RF Levl*: display changes to +10.0 dBm.
- (5) Press [CARR ON/OFF]. Repeated pressing toggles between the on and off states as shown by *ON* and *OFF* at the centre of the screen. Select *ON*. A 100 MHz, 10 dBm carrier is now being generated from the RF OUTPUT socket.

#### Modulation

- (6) Press [MOD] which highlights *FM Devn*. Repeated pressing of the key alternates between FM1 and FM2. Select *FM1 Devn*. Enter 100 on the key pad and terminate with [kHz]. 100 kHz is displayed.
- (7) Press [MOD ON/OFF]. Repeated pressing toggles between the off state (when *Mod Disable* is displayed) and the on state. Select ON. A 100 MHz, 10 dBm carrier is now being generated at a 100 kHz deviation from the RF OUTPUT socket.
- (8) Press [MOD SOURCE] which highlights *ModF* with a waveform displayed. Repeated pressing of the key cycles through sine, triangle and square waveforms. Select sine wave. Enter 500 on the key pad and terminate with Hz. 500.00 Hz is displayed.
- (9) Press [SOURCE ON/OFF]. Repeated pressing toggles between the on and off states. Select *ON*. A 100 MHz, 10 dBm carrier is now being generated at a 100 kHz deviation, modulated at 500 Hz, from the RF OUTPUT socket.

# Using [NEXT] and [PREV] to select a function

The operating example above was carried out by pressing the four function keys in turn in order to enter the parameter values. Another method is to repeatedly press either the [NEXT] or [PREV] key. This enables you to access each of the four functions CARR FREQ, RF LEVEL, MOD, MOD SOURCE in either forward or reverse rotation.

# Using the [1÷10] and [√×10] keys

When you have entered a parameter value using the numerical key pad, you can adjust its value either in single steps or continuous steps.

As an example of its use we will adjust the carrier frequency using the knob for continuous adjustment as well as in selected increments/decrements using single steps.

4-12 46882-225U

(1) Press [CARR FREQ] to select carrier frequency as the current function. Note that the frequency is displayed as 100.000 000 MHz. The number of digits behind the decimal point shows the maximum resolution and indicates that the frequency can be changed in 1 Hz steps.

#### With the control knob

- (2) Select the control knob for adjustment by toggling the [KNOB/STEP] key so that the carrier frequency is displayed underlined by a bracket. With the bracket displayed the control knob is enabled and its sensitivity can be set.
- (3) Adjust the control knob sensitivity by pressing either the [①÷10] key or the [①×10] key. Pressing the [①÷10] key increases the bracket length by one decimal place. Pressing the [①×10] key shortens the bracket length by one decimal place. In this way the resolution of the control knob is respectively increased or decreased by a factor of ten.
- (4) Move the control knob in either direction and note how the displayed carrier frequency changes by the desired amount.
- (5) To check the current amount of offset from the reference carrier frequency press and hold [TOTAL Δ]. For the duration of the key press the offset is displayed as either a negative or positive value.
- (6) You can return at any time to the reference carrier frequency by pressing [RETN]. 100.000 000 MHz is displayed.
- (7) Alternatively, you can make the currently displayed frequency the reference carrier frequency by pressing [SET REF]. Subsequently pressing [RETN] will then return you to this frequency.

## With steps

- (8) Press [KNOB/STEP] to disable the control knob (as indicated by the bracket no longer being displayed).
- (9) Press [SET  $\Delta$ ]. The screen changes to display the default step settings for frequency, level and modulation as shown in Fig. 4-7.
- (10) Press [CARR FREQ]. *Freq Step* is highlighted. Enter the step value on the key pad and terminate with the [MHz], [kHz] or [Hz] key.
- (11) Press [CARR FREQ] again to return to the main screen.
  Note that pressing one of the function keys at any time will at once return you to the main screen.
- (12) Now repeatedly press the [û÷10] and [⇩×10] keys and note how the displayed carrier frequency changes in steps of the desired amount. Holding either of these keys pressed provides continuous stepping.
- (13) As for control knob operation, you can check the current amount of offset from the reference carrier frequency by pressing and holding [TOTAL  $\Delta$ ].
- (14) As for control knob operation, pressing [RETN] returns you to the reference carrier frequency; pressing [SET REF] selects the currently displayed frequency as the reference frequency.



Fig. 4-7 Step setting display showing default settings

# Using the utility menus

As an exercise in the use of the utility menus we will perform the operation of selecting an alternative frequency standard.

Press [CARR FREQ] followed by [MENU] to display the *Utility Group Menu* shown in Fig. 4-8. This is the top level menu of a 3-tier menu chain. Since the [CARR FREQ] function key preceded the [MENU] key, the required *Frequency/Sweep* group is already highlighted on the menu.

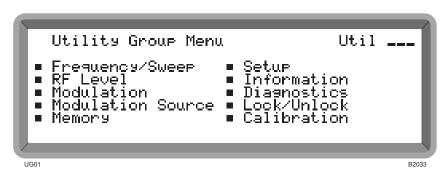


Fig. 4-8 Utility group menu

- (2) Use the [NEXT] and [PREV] keys to move around the menu.
- (3) Highlight *Frequency/Sweep* again and press [SELECT]. This causes the 2nd level *Frequency/Sweep Menu* shown in Fig. 4-9 to be displayed.



Fig. 4-9 Frequency/sweep menu

(4) Highlight utility 4 *Frequency Standard* and press [SELECT]. This displays the 3rd level menu used for internal and external standard selection shown in Fig. 4-10. A flashing cursor awaiting entry is shown against the current selection.

4-14 46882-225U

Fig. 4-10 Frequency standard menu

(5) Step through the selections using the  $[\hat{v} \div 10]$  and  $[\mathbb{Q} \times 10]$  keys or by direct entry on the key pad. Each time, the highlighted selection becomes the current selection (no terminator is required).

Since no external standard is connected, the message *Err 503: Ext standard missing* is displayed every time you select an external standard.

- (6) Select 0: Internal to restore the instrument to normal operation. Internal is displayed as the current selection.
- (7) Press any function key which returns you again to the main display. Pressing [SELECT] at any time from now on will always return you to your last selected utility menu.

#### **Short cut**

Note that for the top and 2nd level menus *Util* is shown each time at the top right. This allows you to use a short cut. Since you now know the utility number for the *Frequency Standard* utility, enter 4 on the key pad for this menu followed by [ENTER] which takes you straight to the requested menu.

## Moving within the menus

When you are using the menus, pressing [SELECT] will take you down the menu chain, pressing [MENU] will take you back up.

#### Looking through the list of menus

To see what utilities are available to you, display the top level menu then press [SELECT] to display the numbered list of menus. Now you can use the [NEXT] and [PREV] keys to browse through the complete list.

Menu operation is summarized graphically in Chap. 3.

## **Menu conventions**

The following simple conventions apply to the menus:

A filled-in square indicates an unprotected function.

An open, unfilled, square indicates a protected function.

An ellipsis (...) indicates a continuation to another screen.

Additionally, the following are used for memory operation:

A dash (-) indicates an unprotected memory store.

A lower-case **p** indicates a protected memory store.

# **DETAILED OPERATION**

# Selecting carrier frequency

Carrier frequency can be entered in the range 9 kHz to 1.2 GHz (2023) or 9 kHz to 2.4 GHz (2024) to a resolution of 1 Hz.

- (1) Press [CARR FREQ] to select carrier frequency as the current function. *Carr Freq:* is highlighted on the screen.
- (2) Enter the required value using the numerical key pad. Terminate using the [Hz], [kHz], [MHz] or [GHz] key.
- (3) The frequency can then be adjusted either in steps or by using the control knob for continuous adjustment. The default increment/decrement is 1 kHz.
- (4) You can check the current amount of offset from the reference carrier frequency by pressing and holding [TOTAL  $\Delta$ ].
- (5) Pressing [RETN] returns you to the reference carrier frequency; pressing [SET REF] selects the currently displayed frequency as the reference frequency.

#### Carrier on/off

The carrier may be switched ON or OFF at any time via the [CARR ON/OFF] key. This effectively switches the output on and off, retaining the 50  $\Omega$  output impedance.

# Carrier sweep operation

The sweep capability allows the comprehensive testing of systems, since measurements at single points will not necessarily give an overall indication of the performance. Sweep operation is carried out in this instrument by means of three utility menus.

#### **Sweep parameters**

Carrier start and stop frequencies together with step size and time are set as follows:

- (1) Select the *Util 1: Carrier Sweep Parameters* menu. This shows the currently selected parameter values (see Fig. 4-11) as well as the currently selected mode.
- (2) Enter the sweep start and stop frequencies.
- (3) Enter the step size. For linear sweeps enter the step size in the range 1 Hz to the instrument maximum frequency to a resolution of 1 Hz.

For log sweeps enter the step size in the range 0.01% to 50.00% to a resolution of 0.01%. Enter step time in the range 50 ms to 10 s (5 s when Option 100 fitted).



Fig. 4-11 Carrier sweep parameters menu

4-16 46882-225U

- (4) To change the mode of sweeping, highlight *Sweep Mode...* and press [SELECT]. This gives you immediate access to the *Util 2: Carrier Sweep Mode Select* menu shown below.
- (5) To carry out the sweeping operation, highlight *Sweep Control*... and press [SELECT]. This gives you immediate access to the *Util 3: Carrier Sweep Control* menu shown below.

## Sweep mode

The following menu allows you to set the carrier sweep mode to either single shot or continuous sweep, to logarithmic or linear sweep and to select the mode of external triggering. For external operation, connect a TTL trigger signal to the rear panel TRIGGER connector. Ensure however, that this socket is not disabled by higher priority mode having been selected. The order of priority is as follows:

FSK logic input Memory recall Sweep trigger

All three modes of operation may be enabled at the same time, but only one mode will be active, the one with the highest priority. Therefore ensure that FSK and memory recall are not enabled, otherwise selecting sweep triggering will have no effect. Sweep mode selection is as follows:

(1) Select the *Util 2: Carrier Sweep Mode Select* menu. This shows the currently selected sweep mode (See Fig. 4-12).

```
Util
             2 ___ Carrier Sweep Mode Select
              - Sinale
                                              1:Cont
                                   0:Sngl
    Mode:
           0
    Type: 0 -
Ext Tris:
                                              1:Log
                                       .1 h
                                      0:Օքք
                                      ĭ:Štart
2:Start∕Stop
           Control...
    Sweer
           Params
    Sweer
UTIL02
                                                      B2830
```

Fig. 4-12 Carrier sweep mode select menu

- (2) Select the required sweep mode by setting *Mode* to either *1* for continuous sweep or *0* for single shot.
- (3) Select the required sweep type by setting *Type* to either *1* for logarithmic sweep or *0* for linear sweep.
- (4) For external triggering set *Ext Trig* to 0 to inhibit the external trigger, or to 1, 2, or 3 to select one of the following triggering modes:

*Start:* The first trigger input causes the carrier sweep to commence sweeping. Any other trigger inputs whilst sweeping are ignored. Only at the end of each sweep is the trigger latch reset ready for the next input.

*Start/Stop:* The first trigger input starts the carrier sweep and the following trigger input pauses it, so that the user can investigate a particular point of interest. The next trigger input continues the sweep from where it was paused. At the start of each sweep the trigger latch is reset ready for the next input.

*Step:* Each trigger input steps the sweep on by one frequency step. The trigger latch is reset after each step ready for the next step.

- (5) To carry out the sweeping operation highlight *Sweep Control*... and press [SELECT] to access the *Util 3: Carrier Sweep Control* menu.
- (6) To return to the *Carrier Sweep Parameters* menu, highlight *Sweep Params*... and press [SELECT].

## Sweep control

Control of the sweep: start, stop, reset and continue is performed as follows:-

(1) Select the *Util 3: Carrier Sweep Control* menu. Initially this shows *Start Sweep* and the start *Carr Freq:* value together with the currently selected *Freq Mode:* (see Fig. 4-13).

```
    Util 3 ___ Carrier Sweep Control
    Start Sweep Mode: Single
    Reset Sweep
    Carr Freq: 1200.000000 MHz
        ** WAITING FOR TRIGGER **
    Freq Mode: (1 _ Swept) 0: Fixed 1: Swept
    Set Params...
    Sweep Mode...
```

Fig. 4-13 Carrier sweep control menu (shown with sweep enabled)

- (2) Enable the sweep operation by setting *Freq Mode:* to 1 (no terminator is necessary). \*\* *WAITING FOR TRIGGER* \*\* is displayed.
- (3) To start the sweep, select *Start Sweep*. The selection changes to *Stop Sweep*, the frequency is shown changing and \*\* *SWEEPING* \*\* is displayed.
- (4) During the sweep, *Reset Sweep* may be selected to discontinue the sweep and reset it to the start frequency. Note that during the sweep all of the function keys are still accessible.
- (5) Selecting *Stop Sweep* causes the selection to change to *Continue Sweep* and \*\*\* *PAUSED* \*\* is displayed.
- (6) Selecting *Continue Sweep* allows the sweep to continue. At the end of a single sweep, the stop frequency is shown and the selection changes to *Restart Sweep* with \*\* *COMPLETE* \*\* displayed. For continuous sweep, the sweep automatically recommences from the start frequency.
- (7) To change the sweep parameters, highlight *Set Parameters*... and press [SELECT] to return to the *Carrier Sweep Parameters* menu.
- (8) To change the sweep mode, highlight *Sweep Mode...* and press [SELECT] to return to the *Carrier Sweep Mode Select* menu.

4-18 46882-225U

# Carrier phase adjustment

The phase offset of the carrier can be adjusted in degrees as follows:

(1) Select the *Util 5: Carrier Phase Adjust* menu. This shows the currently selected phase shift setting (see Fig. 4-14).

```
    Util 5 ___ Carrier Phase Adjust
    Phase Shift: 0.00 deg
        Use knob to adjust phase
    Knob Sensitivity: 0 _ Fine
        0: Fine 1: Medium 2: Coarse
    Reset
```

Fig. 4-14 Carrier phase adjust menu

- (2) Select the required control knob sensitivity between  $Fine~(0.09^\circ)$ ,  $Medium~(0.9^\circ)$  and  $Coarse~(2.7^\circ)$ .
- (3) Highlight *Phase Shift* and adjust the phase using the control knob. Adjustment is in the range -359.91° to +359.91° (fine sensitivity). Note that if you have set the carrier phase and subsequently adjusted the carrier frequency, the menu *Phase Shift* value will be blanked. This is because the value will then be indeterminate due to the adjustment.
- (4) To establish a reference the displayed phase shift can be reset to 0° by highlighting *Reset* and pressing [SELECT].

# Selecting RF level

RF level can be entered in the range -140 to +13 dBm (or to +25 dBm for the High Power Option).

- (1) Select the RF level from the main screen by pressing [RF LEVEL]. *RF Levl:* is highlighted on the screen.
- (2) Enter the required value using the numerical key pad.
- (3) For voltage terminate using the  $[\mu V]$ , [mV] or [V] key. For dBm terminate using the [dB] key. RF levels in linear (PD or EMF) and logarithmic units are selected from the utilities.
- (4) The level can then be adjusted either in steps or by using the control knob for continuous adjustment. The default increment/decrement is 1 dB.
- (5) You can check the current amount of offset from the reference level by pressing and holding  $[TOTAL \Delta]$ .
- (6) Pressing [RETN] returns you to the reference level; pressing [SET REF] selects the currently displayed level as the reference level.
- (7) The RF output level may be toggled on and off by means of the [CARR ON/OFF] key.

#### Choice of units

Conversion can be made between dB and V by pressing the appropriate units key. Selection of linear and logarithmic units is made using Util 10 and Util 11 respectively (see below).

## **Attenuator hold**

Pressing the [ATTEN LOCK] key inhibits operation of the step attenuator from the level at which the key is enabled. Usable for a level reduction of at least 10 dB. Whilst in operation the display shows *Atten Lock*.

## **Reverse power protection**

Accidental application of power to the RF OUTPUT socket trips the reverse power protection (RPP) circuit (unless Option 1: No Attenuator is fitted, which has no protection) and causes Fig. 4-15 to be displayed.

```
Err 500: RPP tripped

*****************

* REVERSE POWER PROTECTION TRIPPED *

***************

Remove signal source

( or terminate RF Output )

then Press any key to reset
```

Fig. 4-15 RPP tripped display

The protection circuit can be reset by pressing any key after having removed the power source. The display then returns to the menu in use at the time that the RPP was tripped.

Note that the protection circuit may be activated when the generator is set to a high level and the RF OUTPUT socket has no terminating load.

4-20 46882-225U

# RF level linear units

You can set the RF level in linear units of volts PD or volts EMF as follows:

(1) Select the *Util 10: RF Level Linear Unit* menu. This shows the currently selected linear unit (see Fig. 4-16).

```
Util 10 ___ RF Level Linear Unit
Linear Unit: 1 _ Volts PD
0: Volts EMF 1: Volts PD
Logarithmic Unit...
```

Fig. 4-16 RF level linear units menu

- (2) Enter 1 for Volts PD or 0 for Volts EMF (no terminator is necessary).
- (3) To select a logarithmic unit, highlight *Logarithmic Unit*... and press [SELECT]. This gives you immediate access to the *Util 11: RF Level Logarithmic Unit* menu shown below.

# RF level logarithmic units

You can set the RF level in logarithmic units as follows:

(1) Select the *Util 11: RF Level Logarithmic Unit* menu. This shows the currently selected logarithmic unit (see Fig. 4-17).

```
    Util 11 ___ RF Level Logarithmic Unit
    Logarithmic Unit: 0 _ dBm
    0: dBm 1: dBµV EMF 4: dBµV PD
    2: dBmV EMF 5: dBmV PD
    3: dBV EMF 6: dBV PD
    Linear Unit...
```

Fig. 4-17 RF level logarithmic units menu

- (2) Enter a number in the range 0 to 6 (no terminator is necessary) to select between volts (dBV), millivolts (dBmV), microvolts (dB $\mu$ V) in EMF or PD and 1 milliwatt into 50  $\Omega$  (dBm).
- (3) To select a linear unit, highlight *Linear Unit*... and press [SELECT]. This gives you immediate access to the *Util 10: RF Level Linear Unit* menu shown above.

4-22 46882-225U

## **Modulation modes**

The EXT MOD INPUT socket allows an external modulation signal to be summed with the signals from the internal oscillator. This allows up to 3 modulations to be available e.g. external FM with a combined internal AM1 and AM2.

Modulation source can be internal or external. If internal, the modulation can be the sum of two signals i.e. AM1 + AM2, FM1 + FM2 or  $\Phi M1 + \Phi M2$ , each of which can have its own depth/deviation and modulation frequency.

The common carrier wave can be modulated by two different types of modulation, where one uses an internal source and the other an external source. The internal source may be composed of two signals. Allowed combinations are:

```
internal AM + external FM ; internal FM + external AM internal AM + external \Phi M ; internal \Phi M + external AM
```

Note that pulse modulation may be selected in addition to any normal modulation combination.

## Mode selection

Modulation mode may be selected as follows:-

- (1) Select the *Util 20: Modulation Mode (Normal)* menu. This shows the currently selected modulation mode against *Mod Mode:*. If pulse modulation is enabled this will additionally be displayed.
- (2) From the menu select the desired modulation mode by highlighting the item and then pressing [SELECT]. The current modulation mode changes accordingly. Select single on the first menu page (shown in Fig. 4-18) or dual on the second (shown in Fig. 4-19).

Fig. 4-18 Modulation mode menu - first page

Fig. 4-19 Modulation mode menu - second page

(3) Press [MOD] to return to the main screen. Repeatedly pressing [MOD] will now step through each modulation of your selected modulation mode.

## Source selection - internal

Having previously selected internal modulation from the *Util 20: Modulation Mode* menu, select the waveform and modulating frequency as follows:-

- (1) Press [MOD SOURCE] to highlight the current modulation source selection.
- (2) Repeatedly press [MOD SOURCE] to cycle through and select a sine, square or triangular waveform.
- (3) Enter the required modulating frequency on the keypad and terminate with the [Hz] or [kHz] key. If the modulation requested exceeds 20 kHz the modulation is set to the maximum value.

The output waveform can be switched in a different sequence to that allowed by the [MOD SOURCE] key. For instance it may be required to switch from sine to square wave without the necessity of switching via the triangular wave. For this requirement, use the *Util 30: Modulation Source* menu shown in Fig. 4-20.

Fig. 4-20 Modulation source menu

4-24 46882-225U

## Source selection - external

AC or DC coupling or automatic levelling control (ALC) can be used in conjunction with an external source. Having previously selected external modulation from the *Util 20 Modulation Mode* menu continue as follows:-

- (1) Press [MOD SOURCE] for modulation source selection.
- (2) Repeatedly press [MOD SOURCE] to cycle through the selections *Ext DC*, *Ext AC* and *Ext ALC*.
- (3) Apply a signal to the EXT MOD INPUT socket. Note that on switch-on this socket is disabled.
- (4) If EXT ALC has been selected and the error message Err 511: ALC too high or Err 512: ALC too low is displayed the signal input is outside the 0.75 to 1.25 V RMS ALC range of the instrument.
- (5) If *EXT DC* has been selected, note that a DCFM nulling facility is available (refer to 'DCFM nulling' in the 'General' section below).

External source selection may also be made by means of the *Util 30: Modulation Source* menu shown in Fig. 4-21.

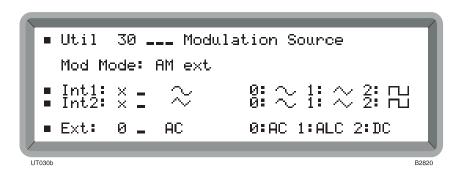


Fig. 4-21 Modulation source menu - shown with an external source selected

## Modulation enable/disable

[SOURCE ON/OFF] switches the current modulation channel on or off. To switch all modulation on or off press [MOD ON/OFF]; this function is mainly used when more than one modulation source is enabled. Switching all modulation off causes *Mod Disable* to appear on the main screen.

# Modulation source phase adjustment

The phase difference of the modulation oscillator channel 2 relative to channel 1 can be adjusted in degrees as follows:

(1) Select the *Util 31: Modulation Source Phase* menu. This shows the currently selected phase difference setting (see Fig. 4-22).

```
    Util 31 ___ Modulation Source Phase
    Phase Difference: 0.0 des
        Use knob to adjust phase
    Knob Sensitivity: 0 _ Fine
        0: Fine 1: Medium 2: Coarse
    Reset
```

Fig. 4-22 Modulation source phase menu

- (2) Select the required control knob sensitivity between *Fine* (0.1°), *Medium* (1°) and *Coarse* (3°).
- (3) Highlight *Phase Difference* and adjust the phase using the control knob. Adjustment is in the range -359.9° to +359.9° (fine sensitivity). Note that if you have set the source phase and subsequently adjusted the source frequency or changed the waveform, the menu *Phase Difference* value will be blanked. This is because the value will then be indeterminate due to the adjustment or changed waveform.
- (4) To establish a reference the displayed phase shift can be reset to 0° by highlighting *Reset* and pressing [SELECT].

4-26 46882-225U

## **Modulation selection**

The carrier can be frequency, amplitude or phase modulated from an internal or external source. Additionally pulse modulation is available from an external source. The internal modulation oscillator is capable of generating two tones simultaneously in one modulation channel and has a frequency range of 0.01 Hz to 20 kHz.

## **Amplitude modulation selection - internal**

Having previously selected the modulation mode (see 'Mode selection' above) select amplitude modulation as follows:-

- (1) Press [MOD] to display the main screen with AM1 Depth highlighted.
- (2) Enter the required internal modulation depth via the numerical key pad and terminate with the [%] key. If you exceed the 99.9% modulation depth it is reset by default to the maximum value.
- (3) If the internal modulation is to be the sum of two signals (selected from the *Util 30* menu), press the [MOD] key again to highlight *AM2 Depth*. Enter the required modulation depth for the second signal. If you exceed the (99.9% AM1) modulation depth limit it is reset by default to the maximum allowed value.

# Frequency modulation selection - internal

Having previously selected the modulation mode (see 'Mode selection' above) select frequency modulation as follows:-

- (1) Press [MOD] to display the main screen with FM1 Devn highlighted.
- (2) Enter the required internal FM deviation via the numerical key pad and terminate with the [Hz] or [kHz] key. If you exceed the 100 kHz deviation limit it is reset by default to the maximum value.
- (3) If the internal modulation is to be the sum of two signals (selected from the *Util 30* menu), press the [MOD] key again to highlight *FM2 Devn*. Enter the required deviation for the second signal. If you exceed the (100 kHz FM1) deviation limit it is reset by default to the maximum allowed value.

4-28 46882-225U

## Phase modulation selection - internal

Having previously selected the modulation mode (see 'Mode selection' above) select phase modulation as follows:-

- (1) Press [MOD] to display the main screen with  $\Phi M1$  Devn highlighted.
- (2) Enter the required internal  $\Phi M$  deviation via the numerical key pad and terminate with the [rad] key. If you exceed the 10 radians deviation limit it is reset by default to the maximum value.
- (3) If the internal modulation is to be the sum of two signals, press the [MOD] key again to highlight  $\Phi M2 \ Devn$ . Enter the required deviation for the second signal. If you exceed the (10 rad  $\Phi$ M1) deviation limit it is reset by default to the maximum allowed value.

#### Pulse modulation selection

Pulse modulation may be selected in addition to any other normal modulation modes. The source is external only from the rear panel PULSE I/P socket. (Note that using this socket prevents 4FSK operation). Selection may be made as follows:

(1) Select the *Util 22: Pulse Modulation* menu. This shows the currently selected modulation mode against *Mod Mode:* (see Fig. 4-23).

```
    Util 22 --- Pulse Modulation
    Mod Mode: FM int
    Pulse Mod: Ø - Disable
    Ø: Disable 1: Enable
```

Fig. 4-23 Pulse modulation menu

- (2) Enter 1 on the key pad (no terminator is required) to *Enable* the external modulation. The display changes to show the current modulation plus *Pulse* (e.g. *Mod Mode: AM int + FM ext + Pulse*).
- (3) Press [MOD] to return to the main screen with *Pulse* displayed together with its *ON* or *OFF* state.

When *ON* the carrier is controlled by the logic level applied to the PULSE I/P socket. A logical '1' (5 V) allows carrier output, a logical '0' (0 V) suppresses it. Turning pulse mod *OFF* effectively applies a logical '1' allowing carrier output.

4-30 46882-225U

#### **FSK** selection

The instrument accepts one or two logic level inputs to produce an FSK modulated output signal. The input data is sampled at 156 kHz and produces a 2 or 4 level shift waveform which is filtered by a 20 kHz Bessel filter and applied to the carrier. Frequency shift keying is selected as follows:

(1) Select the *Util 21: Modulation Mode (Special)* menu. This shows the currently selected modulation mode against *Mod Mode:* (see Fig. 4-24).

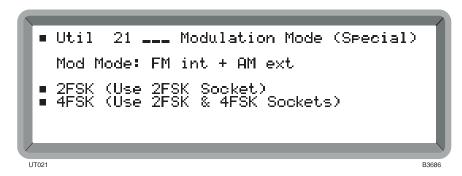


Fig. 4-24 Modulation mode (special) menu

- (2) Select the type of FSK. Either 2FSK or 4FSK is shown against Mod Mode.
- (3) For 2FSK apply a TTL signal to the 2FSK socket. For 4FSK apply the signals to the 2FSK and 4FSK sockets.
- (4) Press [MOD] to return to the main screen with *FM Devn* displayed. Enter the required deviation via the numerical key pad and terminate with the [Hz] or [kHz] key. If you exceed the 100 kHz deviation limit it is reset by default to the maximum value.
- (5) Either 2FSK Ext or 4FSK Ext is shown in the modulation source field. Note that for FSK operation pressing [MOD SOURCE] has no effect on the instrument.
- (6) If FSK is turned *OFF* no frequency shift is applied to the carrier.

The frequency shifts produced by the applied data are as follows:

<u>2FSK</u>				<u>4FSK</u>		
	2FSK	SHIFT	_	2FSK	4FSK	SHIFT
	1	+D	_	1	0	+D
	0	-D	_	1	1	+D/3
			_	0	1	-D/3
			-	0	0	-D

Where D is the set deviation value.

# **Default settings**

The instrument is reset to the factory default settings in the following cases:

- (1) At power-up.
- (2) Following execution of the RCL 999 command.
- (3) Following execution of the \*RST command.

The default settings are shown in Table 4-1.

#### Table 4-1 Instrument default settings

Carrier frequency : (Maximum available) 1.2 GHz/2.4 GHz

Step: 1 kH

RF level –140 dBm (or –2 dBm with the No Attenuator option)

Step: 1 dB Status: ON

Modulation mode Internal FM, modulation disabled

Modulations : FM1 : Deviation: 0 Hz, OFF

: Internal source, frequency: 1 kHz, sine

FM2 : Deviation: 0 Hz, OFF

: Internal source, frequency: 400 Hz, sine

ΦM1 : Deviation: 0 rad, OFF

Internal source, frequency: 1 kHz, sine

ΦM2 : Deviation: 0 rad, OFF

: Internal source, frequency: 400 Hz, sine

AM1 : Deviation: 0%, OFF

: Internal source, frequency: 1 kHz, sine

AM1 : Deviation: 0%, OFF

Internal source, frequency: 400 Hz, sine

Pulse : OFF

:

Modulation steps :  $\Delta FM$  1 kHz,  $\Delta \Phi M$  0.1 rad,  $\Delta AM$  1%

Mod frequency steps: 10 Hz

Carrier sweep

Freq mode : Fixed

Mode : Single sweep

Type: Linear

Ext trigger: Off
Start: 10 kHz

Stop: (Maximum available)

Step size: 1 kHz Time: 50 ms

4-32 46882-225U

# **MEMORY**

## **Memory stores**

There are three types of store: carrier, full and RAM. Both carrier and full stores are non-volatile. The contents of the RAM store are lost when the instrument is switched off.

#### **Carrier store**

The non-volatile carrier frequency store has 100 locations numbered 0 to 99 for the storage of carrier frequency only. This store can be used to apply a set of test conditions to a range of frequencies. For example, if you wish to use the same modulation at a variety of frequencies you can use the carrier store to set the instrument to each of the frequencies in turn. When a carrier store is used it will only replace the current carrier frequency - all the other settings will remain unchanged.

#### **Full store**

The non-volatile full store has 100 locations numbered 100 to 199 for the storage of instrument settings. This store is used to store those parameters which currently affect the RF output; carrier frequency, RF level, modulations in use, on/off and source information and the two modulation oscillator frequencies in use.

A full store contains the following information:

Carrier frequency setting
Carrier frequency step size
RF level setting
RF level step size
All modulation settings
All modulation step sizes
Modulation mode and status
The active modulation frequencies
The modulation frequency step size
All sweep settings

#### **RAM store**

The volatile RAM store has locations numbered from 200 to 299 for the full storage of instrument settings. The parameters stored are the same as those for the full store. However, the RAM store has no long term wear-out mechanism and is therefore recommended for use in ATE programs where all the settings to be used in a test sequence are initially declared and then recalled. This results in a reduction of the GPIB/RS-232 overhead.

#### Storing data

To store data, press the [STO] key and enter the location number on the key pad then press [ENTER]. According to which location range the number falls in, so the display shows *FREQ* (for carrier store), *FULL* or *RAM*. If you make a mistake, and have not yet pressed [ENTER], press [STO] again and re-enter the location number.

## **Memory recall**

There are three types of recall: carrier, full and RAM. Both carrier and full stores are non-volatile. The contents of the RAM store are lost when the instrument is switched off.

#### **Carrier recall**

The non-volatile carrier frequency store has 100 locations numbered 0 to 99 for carrier frequency only. These can be recalled and used in conjunction with full recall to apply a set of test conditions to a range of frequencies.

#### Full recall

The non-volatile full store has 100 locations numbered 100 to 199 for the storage of instrument settings. These stores may be recalled and used to reset the instrument's parameters to those which affect the RF output; carrier frequency, RF level, modulations in use, on/off and source information and the two modulation oscillator frequencies in use.

#### **RAM recall**

The volatile RAM store has locations numbered 200 onwards for the full storage of instrument settings. The parameters that are recalled are the same as those for full recall.

#### Recalling data

To recall data, press the [RCL] key and enter the location number on the key pad then press [ENTER]. According to which location range the number falls in, so the display shows FREQ (for carrier store), FULL or RAM. The [ $\hat{1}$ :10] and [ $\hat{1}$ :10] keys as well as the control knob can be used to recall the next and previous locations.

## Recalling default settings

To recall the factory default settings, press the [RCL] key and enter 999 on the keypad then press [ENTER]. The *RESET* annunciator is shown and the instrument is reset to the settings shown in Table 4-1.

4-34 46882-225U

# **Memory sequencing**

You can step the memory up in a sequence from a start location using a TTL input connected to the rear panel TRIGGER socket. Note that the triggering order of priority is as follows:

FSK logic input Memory recall Sweep trigger

Therefore ensure that FSK is not enabled, otherwise selecting memory recall triggering will have no effect. The memory sequencing operation is as follows:

(1) Select *Util 40: Memory Sequencing* to display the menu shown in Fig. 4-25.

```
Util 40 ___ Memory Sequencing
Sequence Number: 0 _ (0 - 9, 0:Normal)
Memory Num Start: 0 ___
Memory Num Stop: 299 ___
Memory Trisser: 0 _ Off 0:Off 1:On
Memory Write Protect...
```

Fig. 4-25 Memory sequencing menu

- (2) Select one of up to 9 sequences by entering a number in the range 1 to 9. Select 0 to turn sequence off (normal mode).
- (3) Enter the *Memory Num Start* and *Mem Num Stop* store numbers for the selected sequence within the ranges:

```
0 - 99 Carrier store
100 - 199 Full store
200 - 299 RAM store
```

- (4) To enable memory recall sequencing set *Memory Trigger* to 1. Each trigger will then recall the next memory store. When the end of the sequence is reached the carrier and full stores will wrap around to the start.
- (5) To protect your selected memory sequence against accidental overwriting, highlight *Memory Write Protect...* and press [SELECT]. This gives immediate access to the *Util 41: Memory Write Protect* menu shown below.

# **Memory write protection**

To use the memory protection utility first ensure that the instrument is unlocked to Level 1 using *Util 80: Protection Lock/Unlock*. Then you can either write protect a block of stores (or a single store) to prevent accidental overwriting or unprotect it as follows:

(1) Select Util 41: Memory Write Protect to display the menu shown in Fig. 4-26.

```
Util 41 ___ Memory Write Protect
Memory Num Start: 0 ___
Memory Num Stop: 100 ___
Protect
Unprotect ** Protected **
Memory Store State Summary...
```

Fig. 4-26 Memory write protection menu (showing stores 0 to 100 protected)

- (2) For a memory block enter the *Memory Num Start* and *Memory Num Stop* store numbers. For a single store make both numbers the same.
- (3) Select *Protect* or *Unprotect* as required. This action is acknowledged by the message \*\* *Protected* \*\* or \*\* *Unprotected* \*\* appearing respectively.
- (4) You can see which areas of the memory are protected by highlighting *Memory Store State Summary*... and pressing [SELECT]. This gives immediate access to the *Util 42: Memory State Summary* shown below.

Note that at power-on the volatile RAM stores are unprotected to allow immediate use.

4-36 46882-225U

# **Memory state summary**

The memory state summary enables you to look at blocks of 100 stores at a time to see their protection states as follows:

(1) Select Util 42: Memory State Summary to display the summary shown in Fig. 4-27.

Fig. 4-27 Memory state summary (showing carrier stores 0 to 20 protected)

- (2) Choose which of the three blocks you require by selecting Next Blk or Prev Blk.
- (3) An unprotected store is indicated by a dash, a protected store is indicated by a letter *p*. To change the protection status select *Wr.Protect...* This gives immediate access to the *Util 41: Memory Write Protect* menu above.

## **Memory cloning**

You can transfer the stored settings from one signal generator to another by using either the GPIB or the RS-232 interface. These stored settings are the full and carrier stores together with their currently protected states. This means that after cloning has been performed all of the non-protected memory stores on the receiving instrument will have been overwritten.

For GPIB operation the transmitting instrument is automatically configured as a talker sending to one or more automatically configured listeners. It does not matter which addresses the instruments are set to.

For RS-232 operation the transmitting instrument can only send to one receiving instrument. The settings of the serial ports of the two instruments do not matter except that data transfer will be at the higher baud rate.

To use this utility first of all ensure that the instrument is unlocked to Level 1 using *Util 80: Protection Lock/Unlock.* Then proceed as follows:

- (1) Ensure that the correct mode of operation, either GPIB or RS-232, has been selected for both instruments using *Util 50: Remote Operation Select*.
- (2) Select *Util 43: Memory Cloning* on transmitting and receiving instruments to display the menu shown in Fig. 4-28. Check that all instruments show the same remote mode either *GPIB* or *RS232*.

```
    Util 43 ___ Memory Cloning
    Receive * Press SELECT to receive *
    Transmit
    GPIB
```

Fig. 4-28 Memory cloning menu (showing instrument ready to receive via the GPIB)

- (3) On the receiving instrument highlight *Receive* and press [SELECT]. The message \* *Press SELECT to receive* \* changes to \* *Ready to receive* \* and the instrument enters the remote mode (displays *REM*).
- (4) On the transmitting instrument highlight *Transmit* and press [SELECT]. The message \* *Press SELECT* \* changes to \* *Transmitting* \*, *REM* is displayed and data transfer takes place. Cloning times via GPIB and RS-232 are approximately 4s and 14s respectively.
- (5) At the end of the data transfer process \* *Transfer complete* \* is displayed by all participating instruments.

4-38 46882-225U

# **GENERAL**

# Frequency standard selection

This utility enables you to select a 10 MHz output to provide a standard for use with associated equipment. It also enables you to select a standard (either external or internal) for use by the instrument. When an external standard is selected, the internal TCXO is locked to the external standard using a phase locked loop. In this case, the menu allows you to select between *direct* and *indirect*. When *direct* is selected the internal standard for the RF tray is provided directly from the external standard. When *indirect* is selected this standard is provided from the TCXO locked to the external standard. Frequency standard selection is as follows:

(1) Select the *Util 4: Frequency Standard* menu shown in Fig. 4-29.

Fig. 4-29 Frequency standard menu

- (2) To select the standard for the instrument, choose between *Internal* or one of the three external standard selections. When an external standard is selected, *Ext* is displayed on the main screen.
- (3) To obtain an internally generated 10 MHz standard from the instrument's FREQ STD IN-OUT socket, select *Internal 10MHz out*.
- (4) To provide an externally generated 1 or 10 MHz standard for the instrument, connect the signal to the rear panel FREQ STD IN-OUT socket. Then with an external standard selected, you can choose between *direct* and *indirect*. You should select *direct* if your provided standard is better than that fitted in the instrument.

## 50 $\Omega$ /75 $\Omega$ impedance selection

The performance specification of the instrument assumes operation into 50  $\Omega$  loads. By means of this menu in association with the 75  $\Omega$  adapter (see 'Versions, options and accessories' in Chap. 1) you can select operation into 75  $\Omega$  loads whilst maintaining correct voltage calibration. It also enables the reverse power protection circuit to function correctly. But note that in the event of an overload the RPP will function but the adapter will NOT be protected. To use this utility ensure that the instrument is unlocked to Level 1 using *Util 80:Protection Lock/Unlock*. Then proceed as follows:

- (1) First of all connect the 50  $\Omega/75~\Omega$  adapter to the front panel RF OUTPUT socket.
- (2) Select the *Util 12: 50 Ohm/75 Ohm Calibration* menu. This shows the currently selected impedance (see Fig. 4-30).

```
    Util 12 ___ 50 Ohm/75 Ohm Calibration
    Calibration: 0 _ 50 Ohm
    0: 50 Ohm 1: 75 Ohm
```

Fig. 4-30 50  $\Omega$ /75  $\Omega$  calibration menu

(3) Select I for 75  $\Omega$  or  $\theta$  for 50  $\Omega$  (no terminator is necessary). When 75  $\Omega$  is selected, the value of the displayed output level is reduced by 5.7 dB to compensate for the 50  $\Omega$ /75  $\Omega$  adaptor loss.

4-40 46882-225U

## **RF** level limit

To use the RF level limit utility first ensure that the instrument is unlocked to Level 1 using *Util 80: Protection Lock/Unlock*. This utility enables you to set your own maximum output power limit which allows you to protect sensitive devices connected to the RF OUTPUT socket.

#### Proceed as follows:

(1) Select the *Util 13: RF Level Limit* menu. This shows the currently selected RF level limit (see Fig. 4-31).

```
■ Util 13 ___ RF Level Limit
■ RF Level Limit: +10.0 dBm
■ RF Level Limit: 0 - Disable
0: Disable 1: Enable
```

Fig. 4-31 RF level limit menu

- (2) Set the required *RF Level Limit* in the range -125 to +13 dBm to a resolution of 0.1 dB. For the High Power Option (Option 3), the maximum calibrated output level is +25.1 dBm up to 1.2 GHz and +19 dBm above this frequency. Above 1.2 GHz an uncalibrated level up to +25.1 dBm is allowed but an *RF Level Uncalibrated* message will be displayed.
- (3) Enter 0 to disable or 1 to enable the function.

The setting will be saved in non-volatile memory so that when subsequently the instrument is switched on again it will be set with your specified RF level limit.

#### RF level offsets

To use the RF level offsets utility first ensure that the instrument is unlocked to Level 1 using *Util 80: Protection Lock/Unlock*. This utility enables you to offset the RF output level to compensate for cable or switching losses, or to standardize a group of instruments so that they give identical measurements. The offsets do not change the displayed RF level but do change the RF output level. Setting a negative offset decreases the level from the RF OUTPUT socket.

One offset is allowed in each of the following frequency ranges:

```
9 kHz - 150 MHz
150 MHz - 300 MHz
300 MHz - 600 MHz
600 MHz - 1.2 GHz
1.2 GHz - 2.4 GHz
```

#### Proceed as follows:

(1) Select the *Util 14: RF Level Offsets* menu. This shows the selected RF level offset for the currently selected carrier frequency (see Fig. 4-32).

```
Util 14 ___ RF Level Offsets
Carr Freq: 2400.000000 MHz
RF Level: +20.0 dBm
RF Offsets: 1 _ Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
RF Offset: 0.0 dB (1.2GHz _ 2.4GHz)
Save
```

Fig. 4-32 RF level offsets menu

- (2) Enter the required carrier frequency (which automatically selects the appropriate frequency range).
- (3) Set the required positive or negative RF offset in the range 0 to 5.0 dB to a resolution of 0.1 dB using either the key pad or control knob. The applicable frequency range follows in brackets.
- (4) Repeat steps (2) and (3) above for each required additional range.
- (5) Enter 0 to disable or 1 to enable all ranges.
- (6) Select *Save* which causes \* *Saved* \* to be displayed. Now all your offsets are saved in non-volatile memory so that when subsequently the instrument is switched on again it will be set with your specified offsets.

Note that setting an RF level offset may cause the RF level displayed to decrease, so that the absolute limits of the instrument are not exceeded.

4-42 46882-225U

## **DCFM** nulling

For a DC-coupled external FM signal, small frequency offsets can be reduced by using the DCFM nulling facility. Operation is as follows:

- (1) First of all select external FM from *Util 20: Modulation Mode (Normal)*. Then select *DC* coupling from *Util 30: Modulation Source*.
- (2) Select the *Util 23: DCFM Nulling* utility shown in Fig. 4-33 below.

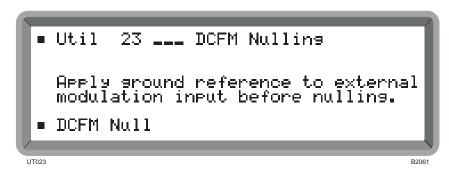


Fig. 4-33 DCFM nulling display

- (3) Follow the on-screen directions by connecting your ground reference to the EXT MOD INPUT socket.
- (4) With *DCFM Null* highlighted press [SELECT]. \* *DCFM Nulling* \* appears during the nulling process and when it disappears the process is completed.

# Keyboard locking and display blanking

You may lock the keyboard to prevent unauthorised use of the instrument. Additionally you may blank the display to prevent sensitive data from being displayed. Selection is made as follows:

- (1) Unlock the protection by selecting *Util 80: Protection Lock/Unlock* and entering the 4-digit password for Level 1 using the keypad and pressing [ENTER].
- (2) Select the Util 53: Key Lock/Display Blanking menu shown in Fig. 4-34.

```
    Util 53 ___ Key Lock/Display Blanking
    Lock Keyboard
    Display Blanking: 0 _ OFF
    0: Off 1: On
```

Fig. 4-34 Key lock/display blanking menu

## **Keyboard locking/unlocking**

- (3) To lock the keyboard highlight *Lock Keyboard* and press [SELECT]. The instrument automatically returns to the main screen which indicates the locked status by displaying a keyshaped icon at the top right of the display. Now the keyboard is locked, although the instrument still responds to GPIB or RS-232 commands.
- (4) To unlock the keyboard enter the 4-digit password for Level 1 using the keypad and pressing [ENTER].

#### Display blanking

- (5) To blank the display highlight *Display Blanking* and press 1 [ENTER]. Press any function key to return to the main screen. Here it can be seen that the main parameters are blanked and replaced by dashes. This also applies to *Util 1: Carrier Sweep Parameters* where the start and stop frequencies are blanked, and to *Util 3: Carrier Sweep Control* where the carrier frequency is blanked.
- (6) To unblank the display re-enter *Util 53* and press 0 [ENTER].
- (7) You may lock the display in the blank state by using *Util 80* to enter an incorrect password.

4-44 46882-225U

# **Power-up options**

The instrument can power-up in one of two states; with the factory settings or with the settings of your choice stored in one of the full memory locations. Selection is made as follows:

(1) Select the *Util 54: Power Up Settings* menu. This shows the currently selected power-up choice (see Fig. 4-35).

```
    Util 54 ___ Power Up Settings
    Power Up Choice: 1 _ Memory recall
    Ø: Factory 1: Memory recall
    Recall memory: 64 ___
```

Fig. 4-35 Power-up settings menu

- (2) Enter 1 for *Memory Recall* or 0 for *Factory* (no terminator is necessary).
- (3) The current recall memory location is shown. To change, highlight *Recall Memory* and enter the required location number (in the range 0 to 199) and terminate with [ENTER].

# Adjusting the display

Display contrast may be set to suit different lighting conditions and the setting saved in memory as follows:

(1) Select the *Util 55: LCD Adjustment* menu. This shows the currently selected contrast setting (see Fig. 4-36).

```
    Util 55 ___ LCD Adjustment
    Contrast: 107 ___
    Save Contrast Setting * Saved *
```

Fig. 4-36 LCD adjustment menu (with the setting saved for automatic recall at switch-on)

- Enter a number in the low- to high-contrast range 0 255 (the default setting is 127). The setting can be adjusted by use of the  $[\hat{\Upsilon} \div 10]$  and  $[\mathbb{J} \times 10]$  keys or the control knob.
- (3) If required, you can save the setting by selecting *Save Contrast Setting*. The instrument responds with \*\* *SAVED* \*\* and from now on whenever the instrument is switched on, the contrast will be at your individual setting.

4-46 46882-225U

## Software information

You can obtain a description of the instrument's software by selecting *Util 60: Software Status*. This causes the software version and date as well as the programmed EPROM part number to be displayed (see Fig. 4-37).



Fig. 4-37 Software status

## Hardware information

You can obtain a description of the instrument's hardware by selecting *Util 61*. This causes the instrument type and serial number to be displayed (see Fig. 4-38).

```
    Util 61 ___ Hardware Status
    Instrument Type: 2023
Serial Number: 811152001
    Instrument Options...
```

Fig. 4-38 Hardware status

(1) Highlight *Instrument Options*... and press [SELECT]. This give you immediate access to the *Util 62: Instrument Options* display shown below.

# **Instrument options**

You can obtain a list of the options fitted in the instrument by selecting *Util 62: Instrument Options* (see Fig. 4-39). For available options refer to 'Options' in Chapter 1.

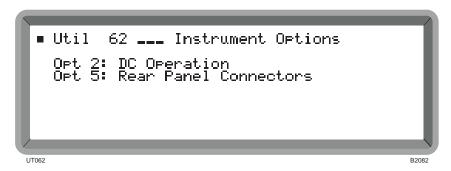


Fig. 4-39 Instrument options display

Note that if no attenuator is fitted reverse power protection is not provided.

4-48 46882-225U

## Protection locking and unlocking.

To prevent accidental interference with the contents of internal memories, internal data is protected by secure key sequences. There are two levels of protection. The most secure, Level 2, used for servicing, is reserved for features such as altering the calibration data of the instrument. Level 1 protection is used for locking the keyboard, blanking the display and for memory protection. A filled-in square indicates an unprotected function. An open, unfilled square indicates a protected function.

To lock or unlock the protection select the *Util 80: Protection Lock/Unlock* menu shown in Fig. 4-40.

```
Util 80 --- Protection Lock/Unlock
Level 1: Locked ----
Level 2: Locked ----
```

Fig. 4-40 Protection locking and unlocking

- (1) Highlight *Level 1:* and enter the 4-figure password on the keypad and press [ENTER]. *Locked* changes to *Unlocked*. The default password is 1234.
- (2) Highlight Level 2: and enter the 6-figure password on the keypad and press [ENTER]. *Locked* changes to *Unlocked*.
- (3) If the entered password is not recognised by the instrument the password will have been changed by operating personnel.
- (4) To lock the instrument, highlight either *Level 1*: or *Level 2*: and enter an incorrect password. Both levels will then become locked.

# Changing the password

To change the password first ensure that the instrument is unlocked to Level 2 using *Util 80: Protection Lock/Unlock*. Then select the *Util 81: Password* menu shown in Fig. 4-41 and proceed as follows:



Fig. 4-41 Password selection menu

- (1) Highlight *Set Level 1 Password:* and enter a 4-figure password on the keypad then press [ENTER].
- (2) Highlight *Set Level 2 Password:* and enter a 6-figure password on the keypad and press [ENTER].

Keep a copy of your passwords in a safe place and remember to update the copy whenever the passwords are changed. In the event that you have forgotten your password(s) get in touch with your local Service Centre (for address refer to the end of this manual).

4-50 46882-225U

# **ERROR MESSAGES**

# **Error handling**

Error messages are divided into four groups:

(1) Background errors - represent a condition of the instrument.

(2) Foreground errors - generally caused by the user.

(3) GPIB errors - generated by incorrect programming.

(4) Fatal errors - caused by failure associated with the main RAM or the

PROM. These errors may or may not be displayed according to the severity of the failure or corruption.

## **Background errors:**

These are generated due to an incorrect operating condition within the instrument. These errors are generated automatically to warn the operator. For example if the reverse power protection circuit should trip the message: *Err 500: RPP tripped* will be displayed on the main screen. Background errors are listed in Table 4-2. Only one error will be displayed, that with the highest priority. To obtain a full list of errors occurring on your instrument in priority order, select *Util 75: Background Errors* (see Fig. 4-42). Select *Down...* if the list is continued on a subsequent page.



Fig. 4-42 Background errors display

## Foreground errors:

These are typically generated when an entered parameter value is outside the valid range or for some other invalid operation. For example trying to set the carrier frequency above or below the specified range will display the following message *Err 100: Carrier limit* on the screen. The foreground errors are cleared upon function selection or by re-entering the parameter correctly. Foreground errors are listed in Table 4-3.

## **Error message priority:**

A background error has a priority bit set which is used to determine which message needs to be displayed. A foreground error will temporarily overwrite the background error if currently displayed, but will return to displaying that error once the foreground error has been cleared.

## **GPIB** errors

When an error occurs the error number is put into the error queue and the error message is displayed. Clearing the error message from the screen does not clear the error queue, which is only cleared by the GPIB command ERROR? query, which returns the error at the head of the queue, or by the \*CLS command which clears the whole error queue. GPIB errors are listed in Table 4-4.

The queue holds a maximum of 64 error message error numbers. If an error occurs while the queue is full the last error number is replaced with 399 to indicate that the queue is full. The ERROR? query returns a value of 399 for queue full and 0 for queue empty.

When an error number is written into the queue, a bit (<erb>) in the status byte register is set, and an appropriate bit in the standard event register is also set (one of <cme>, <exe>, <dde> or <qye>). These errors will also generate SRQ if the relevant bit in the status register is set. Many background errors are also reported in the Hardware and Coupling Status Registers.

Table 4-2 Background errors (500 - 599) in priority order

-	-	-	591	ftl	Main PROM faulty
590	ftl	Main RAM faulty	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-
500	dde	RPP tripped	501	dde	Fractional-N loop low
502	dde	Fractional-N loop high	503	dde	Ext standard missing
504	dde	External std frequency low	505	dde	External std frequency high
506	dde	VCXO loop low	507	dde	VCXO loop high
508	dde	Amplitude modulator unlevelled	509	dde	Output unlevelled
510	dde	Power Amp Fail or Unterminated	511	dde	ALC too high
512	dde	ALC too low	513	dde	DSP not responding
-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	549	exe	RF level uncalibrated
550	exe	RF level limited by AM	551	exe	AM2 limited by AM1
552	exe	FM2 limited by FM1	553	exe	ΦM2 limited by ΦM1

4-52 46882-225U

Table 4-3 Foreground errors (0 - 399)

		_			
0	dde	No error	1	dde	EEPROM checksum
2	dde	Pad cal checksum	3	dde	RF cal checksum
4	dde	Freq std checksum	5	dde	Synthesizer cal checksum
6	dde	Mod ref checksum	7	dde	Mod offset checksum
8	dde	Mod amp checksum	9	dde	ALC cal checksum
10	dde	FM cal factor checksum	11	dde	FM tracking checksum
12	dde	ΦM cal factor checksum	13	dde	System cal checksum
14	dde	AM cal checksum	15	dde	Store checksum
16	dde	Image checksum	-	- ude	Store checksum
		ž		_	- -
20	dde	Frac-N out of lock at <freq></freq>	21	dde	VCO cal fail at <freq></freq>
22	dde	VTF tune cal fail at <freq></freq>	23	dde	FM tracking cal fail at <freq></freq>
-			51	dde	Keyboard buffer overflow
52	dde	Display buffer overflow	53	dde	Display missing
-	-	-	-	-	-
100	exe	Carrier limit	101	exe	Carrier step limit
102	exe	RF level limit	103	exe	RF level step limit
104	exe	Invalid modulation mode	105	exe	AM limit
106	exe	AM2 limit	107	exe	AM step limit
108	exe	AM2 step limit	109	exe	FM limit
110	exe	FM2 limit	111	exe	FM step limit
				1	-
112	exe	FM2 step limit	113	exe	ΦM limit
114	exe	ΦM2 limit	115	exe	ΦM step limit
116	exe	ΦM2 step limit	117	exe	Memory limit
118	exe	AM mod freq limit	119	exe	AM mod step limit
120	exe	AM2 mod freq limit	121	exe	AM2 mod step limit
122	exe	FM mod freq limit	123	exe	FM mod step limit
124	exe	FM2 mod freq limit	125	exe	FM2 mod step limit
126	exe	ΦM mod freq limit	127	exe	ΦM mod step limit
128	exe	ΦM2 mod freq limit	129	exe	ΦM2 mod step limit
130	exe	Return/Transfer not allowed	131	exe	Util limit
132	exe	Start freq limit	133	exe	Stop freq limit
134	exe	Sweep time limit	135	exe	Sweep mode disabled
136	exe	Carrier phase limit	137	exe	AM phase limit
138	exe	FM phase limit	139	exe	ΦM phase limit
140			141		
	exe	Memory store limit  Display blanking limit		exe	Memory recall limit
142	exe		143	exe	GPIB address limit
144	exe	Latch address limit	145	exe	Latch data limit
146	exe	Freq std carrier limit	147	exe	Freq std course adj limit
148	exe	Freq std fine adj limit	149	exe	Mod ref adj limit
170	exe	Util not available	171	exe	Entry outside limits
172	exe	Data out of range	173	exe	Units not valid
174	exe	Unlev fact limited by FM fact	175	exe	Invalid baud rate
176	exe	Data overrun	177	exe	Data parity
178	exe	Data framing	179	exe	Break in data
180	exe	Transmit buffer full	181	exe	Receiver not enabled
182	exe	Protected utility - Level 1	183	exe	Protected utility - Level 2
184	-	_	185	exe	This store is Read Only
186	_	_	187	_	-
188	exe	Pulse unavailable in 4FSK mode	189	exe	Pulse has been disabled
190	exe	No attenuator fitted	191	exe	No high power amp fitted
192	-	-	193	exe	Ext DCFM mod mode required
398	-	-	399	exe	Error queue full

Table 4-4 GPIB errors (400 - 499)

400	cme	Syntax error	401	cme	Unrecognised mnemonic
402	cme	Numeric syntax	403	cme	Data expected
404	cme	Illegal data	405	cme	Too much data
406	cme	Incorrect data type	407	cme	Unrecognised character data
408	cme	Character data not unique	409	cme	Block definition
410	cme	Block size	411	cme	Missing quote
412	cme	Terminator expected	413	cme	Invalid unit
414	cme	Unit not expected	415	cme	No header match found
416	cme	Header not unique	417	cme	Illegal star command
418	cme	Sub-command not allowed	419	cme	Action not allowed with header
420	cme	Query not allowed with header	421	cme	Parser decode
-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-
450	qye	Query INTERRUPTED	451	qye	Query UNTERMINATED
452	qye	Query DEADLOCK	453	qye	Query lost after arbitrary char
-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-
_	-	-	-	-	-

4-54 46882-225U

# Chapter 5 REMOTE OPERATION

# **Contents**

Preparing the instrument for remote operation	
Introduction	
Local lockout	
Remote/local operation	
Remote operation selection	
RS-232 operation	
RS-232 control port	
Handshaking	
Software only	
Hardware only	
Hardware and software	
Control characters	
Setting RS-232 parameters	
GPIB operation	
GPIB control port	
Setting GPIB address	
GPIB functions	
Device listening elements	
Device talking elements	
Programming	
Program messages	
Compound headers	
Program data	
Message exchange protocol	
Device dependent commands	
Default settings	
Carrier frequency	
RF level	
Output control	
Modulation mode	
Modulation control	
Frequency modulation (and FSK)	
Phase modulation	
Amplitude modulation.	
Pulse modulation	
Memory - store	
Memory - recall	
Memory - erase	
Memory - sequencing	
Memory - triggering	
Memory - protection	
Sweep operation	
Sweep mode	
Sweep control	
Miscellaneous commands	
Status byte	
Status data structure - register model	
Standard event registers	
=	

(contd./...)

# **CONTENTS** (contd.)

46882-225U 5-1

## **REMOTE OPERATION**

Hardware event	registers	5-36
Coupling event r	egisters	5-37
	registers	
Queue flag detail	ls	5-39
Status byte when	read by *STB?	5-40
Status byte when	read by serial poll	5-41
Summary of state	us reporting commands and queries	5-42
List of figures		
	operation select menu	
	setup menu	
Fig. 5-3 GPIB a	ddress menu	5-6

5-2 46882-225U

# Preparing the instrument for remote operation

#### Introduction

The 2023 and 2024 Signal Generators can be controlled remotely using either the RS-232 interface or the GPIB (General Purpose Interface Bus) interface. The command set used is designed to comply with IEEE 488.2. In RS-232 mode some IEEE 488.2 features are not implemented due to the restrictions of the interface.

Programs to control the instrument remotely over the two interfaces have much in common, the main difference being the way in which characters are transmitted.

#### **Local lockout**

In the remote mode the controller can set the instrument into Local Lockout state. When Local Lockout is set the front panel is disabled and the [LOCAL] key is made ineffective. This state is often used when the instrument is part of an automatic test system and left unattended. In this state the instrument cannot be affected by operation of the front panel. The keyboard can only be re-enabled by releasing Local Lockout over the remote interface or by switching the supply off and on again.

#### Remote/local operation

When the instrument is addressed by the GPIB controller it will enter its remote mode and the screen will display the [REM] annunciator at the lower right corner. Only one key, [Go To Local], will have any effect. Pressing this key returns the instrument to normal manual operation, unless Local Lockout (LLO) has been asserted by the controller

When the instrument is addressed by the RS-232 controller, the remote mode is normally not entered (and thus no [REM] annunciator appears on the screen), although RS-232 operation is taking place.

In order to go to remote mode via the RS-232 it is necessary to transmit a control character (^A or 01H - connect or go to remote) following which the [REM] annunciator appears. Subsequently pressing [Go To Local] or transmitting a control character (^D or 04H - disconnect or go to local) will return the instrument to normal manual operation (unless Local Lockout has been asserted).

# Remote operation selection

Remote operation can be selected between RS-232 and GPIB as follows:

(1) Select the *Util 50: Remote Operation Select* menu. This shows the currently selected remote mode of operation (see Fig. 5-1).

```
■ Util 50 ___ Remote Operation Select

■ Operation: 0 _ GPIB 0:GPIB 1:RS232

■ GPIB Address...
■ RS232 Setup...
```

Fig. 5-1 Remote operation select menu

- (2) Select between RS232 and GPIB remote operation.
- (3) To set the RS-232 parameters highlight RS232 Setup... and press [SELECT]. This causes the *Util 52: RS232 Setup* menu shown in Fig. 5-2 to be displayed.
- (4) To set the GPIB address highlight *GPIB Address*... and press [SELECT]. This causes the *Util 51: GPIB Address* menu shown in Fig. 5-3 to be displayed.

46882-225U 5-3

## **RS-232 operation**

## **RS-232 control port**

The connections required between the RS-232 serial port and the controlling device are described in Chapter 2 under 'RS-232 interface'.

### Handshaking

#### Software only

Flow control is achieved by XON/XOFF.

Note

All control lines are normally in the OFF state and are ignored.

#### Hardware only

Flow control is achieved DSR or CTS to suspend transmission from the instrument and using DTR to suspend transmission from the controller.

Note

The instrument will try to stop the controller from transmitting when the instrument's input buffer is nearly full and will allow further transmission when the buffer has enough room for new data.

The instrument will continue to transmit for a few characters after receiving the command to stop transmission, the controller must have enough buffer space to cope with this extra data.

#### Hardware and software

Normally used in conjunction with a modem. The flow control between the instrument and modem is achieved with the control lines, and the flow control to the remote control is achieved by XON/XOFF.

#### **Control characters**

The following list shows the control characters that are used over the RS-232 system to simulate certain features of the IEEE 488 interface:

^A (control A 01H) - connect or go to remote

^D (control D 04H) - disconnect or go to local

^R (control R 12H) - local lockout

^P (control P 10H) - release local lockout

^Q (control Q 11H) - XON char for software handshake

^S (control S 13H) - XOFF char for software handshake

Note that power on (PON) also clears the local lockout states.

## **Setting RS-232 parameters**

The RS-232 settings can be changed as follows:

- (1) First of all ensure that RS233 Setup has been selected from the Util 50: Remote Operation Select menu.
- (2) Select the *Util 52: RS232 Setup* menu. This shows the current RS-232 settings (see Fig. 5-2).

5-4 46882-225U

```
■ Util 52 ___ RS232 Setup

■ Data Bits: 8 _ (7 or 8)
■ Stop Bits: 1 _ (1 or 2)
■ Baud Rate: 300 ____ (300 - 9600)
■ Parity: 0 _ NONE 0:None 1:Odd 2:Even
■ Hardware Hndshk: 1 _ On 0:Off 1:On
■ XON/XOFF Hndshk: 0 _ Off
```

Fig. 5-2 RS-232 setup menu

- (3) Set the Data Bits to either 7 or 8.
- (4) Set the *Stop Bits* to either 1 or 2.
- (5) Set the *Baud Rate* in the range 300 to 9600 bit/s. But note that if the entered value is not one of the following standard settings, the next higher value will be selected by default:

- (6) Set Parity between None, Odd and Even.
- (7) Set the *Hardware Hndshk* and the *XON/XOFF Hndshk* as required to any handshake combination from both off to both on.

46882-225U 5-5

## **GPIB** operation

The instrument can be operated remotely from a personal computer fitted with a GPIB interface card or a dedicated GPIB controller. All functions can be controlled by coded messages sent over the interface bus via the 24-way socket on the rear panel of the instrument. IEEE Standard 488.2 (1987) is implemented, which defines the protocols and syntax of commands.

The instrument can function either as a talker or a listener. In the listen mode, it will respond to IEEE 488.2 common commands and queries and device-specific commands and queries. These allow various device functions to be controlled and operating parameters to be set. In the talk mode, device status information and parameter settings can be read from the instrument.

For full information on the IEEE protocols and syntax the IEEE 488.2 standard should be consulted.

#### **GPIB** control port

The connections required between the GPIB interface port and the controlling device are described in Chapter 2 under 'General Purpose Interface Bus (GPIB)'.

## **Setting GPIB address**

The instrument must be given an address code before it can be used by remote control over the GPIB. This address is selected as follows:

(1) Select the *Util 51: GPIB Address* menu. This shows the current GPIB address (see Fig. 5-3).



Fig. 5-3 GPIB address menu

(2) Enter the address which must be unique on the system to the instrument and within the range 0 to 30.

#### **GPIB** functions

The IEEE 488.1 interface functions offered by the 2023 and 2024 Signal Generators are as follows:

Source handshake (SH1) complete capability. Acceptor handshake (AH1) complete capability.

Talker (T6) basic talker, serial poll, unaddress if MLA.

Listener (L4) basic listener, unaddress if MTA.

Service Request (SR1) complete capability.
Remote/Local (RL1) complete capability.
Device clear (DC1) complete capability.
Device trigger (DT1) complete capability
Parallel Poll (PP0) no capability.

Controller (C0) no capability.

Tri-state drivers (E2) as opposed to open collector drivers.

5-6 46882-225U

## **Device listening elements**

The following is a list of the device listening elements (as defined in the IEEE 488.2 standard) which are used in the instrument:

- <PROGRAM MESSAGE>
- <PROGRAM MESSAGE TERMINATOR>
- <PROGRAM MESSAGE UNIT>
- <PROGRAM MESSAGE UNIT SEPARATOR>
- <COMMAND MESSAGE UNIT>
- <QUERY MESSAGE UNIT>
- <COMPOUND COMMAND PROGRAM HEADER>
- <COMPOUND QUERY PROGRAM HEADER>
- <PROGRAM HEADER SEPARATOR>
- <PROGRAM DATA>
- <PROGRAM DATA SEPARATOR>
- <DECIMAL NUMERIC PROGRAM DATA>
- <CHARACTER PROGRAM DATA>
- <SUFFIX PROGRAM DATA>
- <STRING PROGRAM DATA>
- <ARBITRARY BLOCK PROGRAM DATA>

# **Device talking elements**

The following is a list of the device talking elements (as defined in the IEEE 488.2 standard) which are used in the instrument:

- <RESPONSE MESSAGE>
- <RESPONSE MESSAGE TERMINATOR>
- <RESPONSE MESSAGE UNIT>
- < RESPONSE MESSAGE UNIT SEPARATOR>
- <COMPOUND RESPONSE HEADER>
- <RESPONSE HEADER SEPARATOR>
- <RESPONSE DATA>
- <RESPONSE DATA SEPARATOR>
- <NR1 NUMERIC RESPONSE DATA>
- <NR2 NUMERIC RESPONSE DATA>
- <ARBITRARY ASCII RESPONSE DATA>
- <CHARACTER RESPONSE DATA>
- <STRING RESPONSE DATA>
- <DEFINITE LENGTH ARBITRARY BLOCK RESPONSE DATA>

46882-225U 5-7

## **Programming**

### **Program messages**

A message consists of one or more message units. Message units are separated by a semi-colon (;). The whole message is ended by the Program Message Terminator (or End Of Message) defined as one of the following:

- (1) <newline> (ASCII 10 often known as 'line feed') or
- (2) <newline> + END (the EOI line is asserted as well) or
- (3) + END (EOI is asserted in the last data byte of the message)

#### **Note**

A response message is always terminated by <EOM> consisting of <newline> + END.

A message unit consists of a mnemonic header which may be followed by data. If data follows, it must be separated from its header by at least one space:

```
<header><SPACE><data>
e.g. RFLV:INC 6.0 dB
```

Spaces may be freely inserted in a message to improve readability, except within a header or within data.

A header may be a command or a query. A query has a '?' as its final character and causes the generation of a response message which will be read by the controller. Common commands and queries (defined in IEEE 488.2) begin with a '\*'.

Upper and lower case characters are considered equivalent (i.e. FM fm Fm fM are all interpreted by the instrument in the same way).

## **Compound headers**

The instrument implements compound headers which allows a complex set of commands to be built up from a small set of basic elements in a 'tree and branch' structure. The elements of a compound header are separated by a colon (:). Spaces are not allowed within a header.

Special rules apply when more than one compound header is used in one message. When the separator ';' is encountered, all headers except the trailing element of the previous header in the message are assumed to precede the following header, for example:

```
AM:DEPTH 30PCT;ON
```

is equivalent to the two commands:

```
AM:DEPTH 30PCT and AM:ON
```

This does not apply to common commands (\*RST etc.). The rule may be overridden by preceding a header with a colon, for example:

```
AM:ON;:FM:ON
```

Most main functions have a short form of header which may be used for clarity and brevity in simple messages, for example:

CFRQ 1.25GHZ is the same as CFRQ:VALUE 1.25GHZ

5-8 46882-225U

## Program data

Data can take many forms, as follows:

Decimal Numeric Data is a flexible numeric format which encompasses integer, fixed point and floating point (mantissa and exponent) representations. Data is rounded to a resolution appropriate to the function. Decimal data can, in most cases, be followed by the appropriate units. If no units are present, the specified default units are assumed.

Character Data is an alphanumeric word.

String Data consists of a number of 7-bit ASCII characters enclosed in quotes, either a pair of single ('ASCII 39') or double ("ASCII 34") quotes may be used.

Some commands can accept Multiple Data items which are separated by commas, for example MODE FM,AM.

## Message exchange protocol

The controller should not attempt to read a response until it has sent the entire query message (terminated by EOM). Also, it should not start to send a new message until it has read the entire response (terminated by EOM). The query message may contain more than one query message unit, but only one response message (containing several response message units) is generated.

Failure to follow the protocol will generate a query error:

INTERRUPTED (error 450) occurs when the controller starts to send a new message before having read the response to a preceding query.

UNTERMINATED (error 451) occurs when the controller attempts to read a response without having sent a query.

DEADLOCK (error 452) can only occur if the input and output buffers are both filled by the controller having sent an extra long message containing several query message units.

These instruments have an input buffer of 256 characters and an output buffer of 256 characters.

46882-225U 5-9

## Common commands and queries (IEEE 488.2)

The IEEE 488.2 standard defines a set of common commands and queries which implement common system functions.

Common command and query mnemonics are preceded by an asterisk (\*) to distinguish them from device dependent data such as instrument programming strings. The following common commands and queries are implemented in the instrument:

Mnemonic	Name and Description				
*IDN?	Identification Query. Returns an arbitrary ASCII response comprising four data fields in the format:				
	<pre><manufacturer>,<model>,<serial number="">,<software and="" issue="" number="" part="">.</software></serial></model></manufacturer></pre>				
	where: <manufacturer> is IFR, <model> is the instrument model number, which is one of 2023 or 2024.  <serial number=""> is the instrument serial number in the form nnnnnn/nnn, where n is an ASCII digit in the range 0 to 9.  <software and="" issue="" number="" part=""> is in the form nnnnn/nnn/nnn, where n is an ASCII digit in the range 0 to 9.</software></serial></model></manufacturer>				
Example:	IFR,2024,811152/011,44533/446/01.00 <eom></eom>				
*OPT?	Option Identification Query. Returns an arbitrary ASCII response containing a data field for each fitted option in the format:				
	<option a="">,<option b="">, ,<option n=""><eom></eom></option></option></option>				
Example:	HIGH POWER, REAR PANEL CONNECTORS < EOM>				
	If no options are fitted, ASCII '0' is returned.				

#### Note

# Because an Arbitrary ASCII Response ends with the Response Message Terminator (<EOM>) either \*IDN? or \*OPT? must be the last Query Message Unit in a Program Message.

*RST	Reset Command. Sets the instrument functions to the factory default power up state.
*TST?	Self Test Query. Returns a '0' when the GPIB interface and processor are operating.
*OPC	Operation Complete Command. Sets the Operation Complete bit in the Standard Event Status Register when execution of the preceding operation is complete.
*OPC?	Operation Complete Query. Returns a '1' when the preceding operation has been completed.
*WAI	Wait to Continue Command. Inhibits execution of an overlapped command until the execution of the preceding operation has been completed.
*TRG	Trigger Command. Equivalent to Group Execute Trigger.
*STB?	Read Status Byte Query. Returns the value of the Status Byte as an nr1 number (0-255).
*SRE <nrf></nrf>	Service Request Enable Command. Sets the Service Request Enable Register.
*SRE?	Service Request Enable Query. Returns the value of the Service Request Enable Register as nr1.
*ESR?	Standard Event Status Register Query. Returns the value of the Status Event Status Register as nr1.
*ESE <nrf></nrf>	Standard Event Status Enable Command. Sets the Standard Event Enable Register.
*ESE?	Standard Event Status Enable Query. Returns the value of the Standard Event Status Enable Register as nr1.
*CLS	Clear Status Command. Clears all the Status Event registers and clears the Error Queue. Does not affect the Enable Registers.

5-10 46882-225U

### **Device dependent commands**

The following list describes the features of the device dependent mnemonics for the instrument together with simple examples of their use within each major section (Carrier frequency, RF level, etc.) The root mnemonic is listed first followed by the lower level mnemonics. Each group is followed by a list of requirements for data type and suffix.

In addition to the normal listen commands the instrument accepts query commands which cause it to prepare a message which will be sent to the controller when the instrument is next addressed to talk. For each query an example of a response is given. Where responses are similar for a group of queries not all are listed. Some queries can produce more than one type of response - an example of each is usually given.

In the list which follows, the abbreviations <char>, <nrf> and <str> have the following meanings:

<char> = Character Program Data

<nrf> = Decimal Numeric Program Data

<str> = String Program Data

Where the data format is Decimal Numeric Program Data, the value may be expressed as a signed or unsigned number in any of the following formats:

nr1: Decimal integer, e.g. 1234 or -567

nr2: Floating point number, e.g. 1.234 or -56.789

nr3: Floating point number with exponent, e.g. 1.2345E5 or -12.47E-8

## **Default settings**

These are the settings assigned to instrument functions in the following cases:

- (i) Power-up to factory default settings.
- (ii) Execution of \*RST command.
- (iii) Recall Store 999.

46882-225U 5-11

#### **Carrier frequency**

**CFRQ** Set Carrier Frequency (short form)

:VALUE Set Carrier Frequency

:INC Set Carrier Frequency step size

> Data type: Decimal Numeric Program Data Allowed suffices:

Any one of: GHZ, MHZ, KHZ or HZ

Default suffix:

:UP Go UP one step :DN Go DOWN one step :RETN Return to original setting

:XFER Transfer current value to be the new setting

> Data type: Allowed suffices: None Default suffix: None

:MODE Selects the mode of carrier frequency operation. SWEPT enables swept

carrier frequency operation, while FIXED disables it

Data type :  $Character\ Program\ Data\ (FIXED\ -\ non\ swept\ mode,\ SWEPT\ -\ swept\ mode).$ 

Allowed suffices: Default suffix:

:START Set Start Frequency for use in sweep :STOP Set Stop Frequency for use in sweep

Data type: Decimal Numeric Program Data Allowed suffices: Any one of: GHZ, MHZ, KHZ or HZ

Default suffix:

:TIME Set time per sweep step

> Data type : Decimal Numeric Program Data

Allowed suffices: MS or S Default suffix:

:PHASE Adjust Phase Offset of Carrier in degrees

> Data type: Decimal Numeric Program Data

Allowed suffices: DEG Default suffix: DEG

> Examples: CFRQ: VALUE 2.54MHZ; INC 10KHZ

CFRQ:UP;XFER CFRQ:START 1MHZ;STOP 10MHZ;TIME 100MS

CFRQ: MODE SWEPT

CFRQ? Prepares message containing information on Carrier Frequency setting in the

following format:

:CFRQ:VALUE <nr2>; INC <nr2>;MODE<mode>

<mode> is character program data indicating whether carrier

frequency operation is swept or fixed

Example: :CFRQ:VALUE 1000000000.0; INC 25000.0; MODE FIXED

5-12 46882-225U

#### **RF** level

**RFLV** Set RF Output Level (short form)

:VALUE Set RF Output Level

> Data type: Decimal Numeric Program Data

Allowed suffices: Any one of: DBM, DBV, DBMV, DBUV, V, MV or UV

Default suffix: DBM unless changed by UNITS command

:INC Set RF Level step (dB)

> Data type : Decimal Numeric Program Data

Allowed suffices : DB only Default suffix :

:UP Go UP one step :DN Go DOWN one step :RETN Return to original setting

:XFER Transfer current value to be the new setting

:ON Turn RF Output ON :OFF Turn RF Output OFF

> Data type : None Allowed suffices : None Default suffix: None

:TYPE Selects EMF or PD for voltage related units

> Data type: Character Program Data (EMF or PD)

Allowed suffices: None Default suffix : None

:UNITS Select default RF level units.

> Data type : Character Program Data (DBM, DBV, DBMV, DBUV, V, MV or UV)

Allowed suffices: None Default suffix: None

> RFLV:VALUE -27.3DBM;ON RFLV:TYPE PD;VALUE 1.23UV Examples:

Set RF Level max limit (short form) :VALUE

Data type:

Set RF Level max limit

Decimal Numeric Program Data Allowed suffices: Any one of: DBM, DBV, DBMV, DBUV, V, MV or UV

Default suffix: DBM unless changed by UNITS command

:ENABLE Enable limit :DISABLE Disable limit

:LIMIT

:OFFS Set RF Level offset for given frequency band (short form)

:VALUE Set RF Level offset for given frequency band

> Data type: Decimal Numeric Program Data

Allowed suffices: DB only Default suffix: DB

:ENABLE Enable offsets :DISABLE Disable offsets

:SAVE Save offsets in non-volatile memory

Prepares message containing information on RF Level setting in the following RFLV?

format:

: RFLV: UNITS < unit>; TYPE < type>; VALUE < nr2>; INC < nr2>; < status>

where: <unit> is character program data defining the default RF level

units (DBM, DBV, DBMV, DBUV, V, MV or UV), <type> is character program data indicating EMF or PD and <status> is a program mnemonic indicating whether the RF output is ON or

OFF

:RFLV:UNITS DBM;TYPE PD;VALUE -103.5;INC 2.0;ON :RFLV:UNITS DBV;TYPE EMF;VALUE -83.2;INC 0.5;ON Examples:

Prepares message containing information on RF Level max limit setting in the **RFLV:LIMIT?** 

following format:

:RFLV:LIMIT:VALUE <nr2>;<status>

Example: :RFLV:LIMIT:VALUE-20.0;ENABLE

Prepares message containing information on RF Level offset in the following **RFLV:OFFS?** 

format: : RFLV: OFFS: VALUE < nr2>; < status>

:RFLV:OFFS:VALUE-3.2;ENABLE

Example:

5-14 46882-225U

#### **Output control**

These commands allow you to download and store settings without the output changing.

**OUTPUT** [not used alone]

:DISABLE Allows user to download and store settings in the normal way without the

output of the instrument changing until the OUTPUT:ENABLE command is

received.

:ENABLE Enables the instrument outputs such that the outputs will adjust to the values

specified by commands sent while the outputs were disabled.

Note: It is up to the user to ensure that the last command sent, prior to OUTPUT:ENABLE, is such that the RF output is set to a safe level.

Data type: Allowed suffices: Default suffix: None

> Examples: OUTPUT:DISABLE

CFRQ 300MHZ; RFLV 10DBM; MODE AM; AM 40PCT;

CFRQ SOUMHZ; RFLV TODBM; MODE AI AM:ON; MOD:ON; STO 200 CFRQ 400MHZ; RFLV 7DBM; STO 201 CFRQ 500MHZ; RFLV 5DBM; STO 202 CFRQ 600MHZ; RFLV 4DBM; STO 203 OUTPUT; ENABLE

RCL 200 RCL 201 RCL 202 RCL 203

**OUTPUT?** Prepares message containing information on output control setting in the

> following format: : OUTPUT: <status>

<status> is a program mnemonic indicating whether the output

control is ENABLED or DISABLED

Examples: :OUTPUT:ENABLE

:OUTPUT:DISABLE

#### **Modulation mode**

**MODE** Set modulation mode

> Data type: Character Program Data (valid combinations of AM, FM, PM, FSK2L,

> > FSK4L or PULSE. See table below.)

Allowed suffices: Default suffix: None

Examples:

MODE AM, FM MODE FM, PULSE

**VALID MODE COMBINATIONS TABLE** 

AM [,PULSE] FM [,PULSE] PM [,PULSE] AM,FM [,PULSE] AM,PM [,PULSE] FSK2L [,PULSE] FSK4L

Note...

Order is not important, for example AM,FM is equivalent to FM,AM. Pulse modulation can be used with any of the AM,FM,PM and FSK2L modes, but not with FSK4L

FSK2L and FSK4L parameters are controlled using the FM

commands

MODE? Prepares message containing information on Modulation Mode in the

> following format: :MODE <mode>

<mode> is character program data indicating the modulation mode

settings

Example: :MODE AM, FM

#### **Modulation control**

MOD [not used alone]

Turn modulation globally ON :ON Turn modulation globally OFF :OFF

> Examples: MOD:ON

MOD:OFF

MOD? Prepares message containing information on Modulation Control in the

> following format: :MOD:<status>

where: <status> is a program mnemonic indicating whether the

Modulation is globally ON or OFF

Example: :MOD:ON

5-16 46882-225U

#### Frequency modulation (and FSK)

:MODF

:UP

FM or FM1 or FM2 Set FM Deviation (short form)

Set FM Deviation :DEVN Set FM step size :INC

> Decimal Numeric Program Data Data type: Allowed suffices: Any one of: GHZ, MHZ, KHZ or HZ

Default suffix :

Select modulation source where <src> is any one of: INT, EXTAC, EXTALC, :<src>

or EXTDC

Turn FM ON (locally) :ON Turn FM OFF (locally) :OFF Go UP one step :UP Go DOWN one step :DN Return to original setting :RETN

Transfer current value to be the new setting :XFER

> Data type: None Allowed suffices: None Default suffix: None

> > Examples:

FM:DEVN 25KHZ;INT;ON FM1:DEVN 15KHZ;INC 1KHZ;EXTDC Set FM modulation oscillator frequency (short form)

Set FM modulation oscillator frequency :VALUE

Set FM modulation oscillator frequency step size :INC

> Data type : Decimal Numeric Program Data Allowed suffices: Any one of: GHZ, MHZ, KHZ or HZ

Default suffix:

Go UP one step

Go DOWN one step :DN Return to original setting :RETN

Transfer current value to be the new setting :XFER

Select sinusoidal waveform :SIN Select triangle waveform :TRI Select square waveform :SQR

> Data type: None Allowed suffices: None Default suffix:

:PHASE

Set phase offset of FM2 relative to FM1

Data type: Decimal Numeric Program Data

Allowed suffices: Default suffix : DEG

> Examples: FM2:MODF:VALUE 1.5KHZ;SIN

FM:MODF:PHASE 1.2DEG

**DCFMNL** Perform DC FM null operation

 $\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Data type} : & \text{None} \\ \text{Allowed suffices} : & \text{None} \\ \text{Default suffix} : & \text{None} \end{array}$ 

Example: DCFMNL

FM? or FM1? or FM2?

Prepares message containing information on FM setting in one of the

following formats:

:FM:DEVN <nr2>;<src>;<status>;INC <nr2> :FM1:DEVN <nr2>;<src>;<status>;INC <nr2> :FM2:DEVN <nr2>;<src>;<status>;INC <nr2>

where: <src> is a program mnemonic representing the source of the

modulation signal and <status> is a program mnemonic indicating whether the frequency modulation is locally ON or

OFF

Example: :FM1:DEVN 25000.0;INT;ON;INC 1000.0

FM:MODF? or FM1:MODF? or FM2:MODF?

Prepares message containing information on FM modulation oscillator setting

in one of the following formats:

:FM:MODF:VALUE <nr2>;<shape>;INC <nr2>
:FM1:MODF:VALUE <nr2>;<shape>;INC <nr2>
:FM2:MODF:VALUE <nr2>;<shape>;INC <nr2>

where: <shape> is a program mnemonic representing the waveform

shape

Example: :FM1:MODF:VALUE 5750.00;SIN;INC 1000.00

5-18 46882-225U

#### Phase modulation

PM or PM1 or PM2 Set Phase Modulation Deviation (short form)

:DEVN Set Phase Modulation Deviation Set Phase Modulation step size :INC

> Data type: Decimal Numeric Program Data

Allowed suffices: **RAD** Default suffix: RAD

Select modulation source where <src> is any one of: INT, EXTAC, EXTALC, :<src>

or EXTDC

:ON Turn PM ON (locally) :OFF Turn PM OFF (locally) :UP Go UP one step :DN Go DOWN one step :RETN Return to original setting

:XFER Transfer current value to be the new setting

> Data type : None Allowed suffices: None Default suffix: None

> > Examples:

PM:DEVN 2.38RAD;INT;ON PM1:DEVN 1.5RAD;INC 0.1RAD;EXTAC

:MODF Set PM modulation oscillator frequency (short form)

:VALUE Set PM modulation oscillator frequency

:INC Set PM modulation oscillator frequency step size

> Decimal Numeric Program Data Data type: Allowed suffices: Any one of: GHZ, MHZ, KHZ or HZ

Default suffix: HZ

:UP Go UP one step :DN Go DOWN one step :RETN Return to original setting

:XFER Transfer current value to be the new setting

:SIN Select sinusoidal waveform :TRI Select triangle waveform :SQR Select square waveform

Data type : Allowed suffices: None Default suffix: None

:PHASE Set phase offset of PM2 relative to PM1

> Examples: PM1:MODF:VALUE 10.5KHZ;SQR PM2:MODF:PHASE 2.0DEG

PM? or PM1? or PM2?

Prepares message containing information on Phase Modulation setting in one

of the following formats:

:PM:DEVN <nr2>;<src>;<status>;INC <nr2> :PM1:DEVN <nr2>;<src>;<status>;INC <nr2> :PM2:DEVN <nr2>;<src>;<status>;INC <nr2>

where

<src> is a program mnemonic representing the source of the modulation signal and <status> is a program mnemonic indicating whether the phase modulation is locally ON or

OFF

Example: :PM2:DEVN 2.30;INT;OFF;INC 0.05

PM:MODF? or PM1:MODF? or PM2:MODF?

Prepares message containing information on PM modulation oscillator setting in one of the following formats:

:PM:MODF:VALUE <nr2>;<shape>;INC <nr2>
:PM1:MODF:VALUE <nr2>;<shape>;INC <nr2>
:PM2:MODF:VALUE <nr2>;<shape>;INC <nr2>

where: <shape> is a program mnemonic representing the waveform

shape

Example: :PM2:MODF:VALUE 2500.00;TRI;INC 500.00

5-20 46882-225U

#### **Amplitude modulation**

AM or AM1 or AM2 Set AM Depth (short form)

:DEPTH Set AM Depth :INC Set AM step size

> Data type : Decimal Numeric Program Data

Allowed suffices: Default suffix:

:<src> Select modulation source where <src> is any one of: INT, EXTAC, EXTALC,

Turn AM ON (locally) :ON Turn AM OFF (locally) :OFF Go UP one step :UP Go DOWN one step :DN Return to original setting :RETN

Transfer current value to be the new setting :XFER

> Data type: None Allowed suffices : None Default suffix: None

> > AM:DEPTH 30.5PCT;EXTAC;ON AM1:DEPTH 40PCT;INT;OFF Examples:

:MODF Set AM modulation oscillator frequency (short form)

:VALUE Set AM modulation oscillator frequency

:INC Set AM modulation oscillator frequency step size

> Data type: Decimal Numeric Program Data Allowed suffices : Any one of: GHZ, MHZ, KHZ or HZ

Default suffix : HZ

:UP Go UP one step :DN Go DOWN one step :RETN Return to original setting

:XFER Transfer current value to be the new setting

:SIN Select sinusoidal waveform :TRI Select triangle waveform :SQR Select square waveform

> Data type: Allowed suffices : None Default suffix: None

:PHASE Set phase offset of AM2 relative to AM1

> Examples: AM2:MODF:VALUE 15.5KHZ;TRI;INC 500HZ

AM:MODF:PHASE 5DEG

#### AM? or AM1? or AM2?

Prepares message containing information on Amplitude Modulation setting in one of the following formats:

:AM:DEPTH <nr2>;<src>;<status>;INC <nr2> :AM1:DEPTH <nr2>;<src>;<status>;INC <nr2>

:AM2:DEPTH <nr2>;<src>;<status>;INC <nr2>

where <src> is a program mnemonic representing the source of the
 modulation signal and <status> is a program mnemonic
 indicating whether the amplitude modulation is locally ON or

OFF

Example: :AM1:DEPTH 56.6;INT;ON;INC 5.0

# AM:MODF? or AM1:MODF? or AM2:MODF?

Prepares message containing information on AM modulation oscillator setting

in one of the following formats:

:AM:MODF:VALUE <nr2>;<shape>;INC <nr2>
:AM1:MODF:VALUE <nr2>;<shape>;INC <nr2>
:AM2:MODF:VALUE <nr2>;<shape>;INC <nr2>

where: <shape> is a program mnemonic representing the waveform

shape

Example: :AM:MODF:VALUE 5000.00;TRI;INC 1000.00

5-22 46882-225U

#### **Pulse modulation**

**PULSE** [not used alone]

:ON Turn Pulse modulation ON Turn Pulse modulation OFF :OFF

> Data type : None Allowed suffices : None Default suffix: None

> > PULSE:ON PULSE:OFF Examples:

**PULSE?** Prepares message containing information on Pulse Modulation setting in the

following format: :PULSE:<status>

where: <status> is a program mnemonic indicating whether the pulse

modulation is ON or OFF

:PULSE:ON Examples:

:PULSE:OFF

#### **Memory - store**

Store 0-299 (short form)

:MEM Store 0-299

:CFRQ Carrier Freq Store 0-99
:FULL Full Store 100-199
:RAM RAM Store 200-299

Data type: Decimal Numeric Program Data

Allowed suffices : None Default suffix : None

Examples: STO:FULL 112

STO:CFRQ 83

#### **Memory - recall**

RCL Recall Store 0-299 (short form)

:MEM Recall Store 0-299

:CFRQ Recall Carrier Freq Store 0-99
:FULL Recall Full Store 100-199
:RAM Recall RAM Store 200-299

Data type: Decimal Numeric Program Data

Allowed suffices : None

Default suffix : None

:UP Step up through stores. Use this command for memory sequencing
:DN Step down through stores. Use this command for memory sequencing

Examples: RCL:FULL 125

RCL:UP

RCL? Prepares message containing information on last memory store that was

recalled in the following format:

:RCL:MEM <nr1>

Examples: :RCL:MEM 126

#### Memory - erase

**ERASE** [not used alone]

:CFRQ Erase all Carrier Freq Stores (0-99)
:FULL Erase all Full Stores (100-199)
:RAM Erase all RAM Stores (200-299)
:ALL Erase all Stores (0-299)

 $\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Data type}: & \text{None} \\ \text{Allowed suffices}: & \text{None} \\ \text{Default suffix}: & \text{None} \end{array}$ 

Examples: ERASE: FULL

ERASE:ALL

Memory - sequencing

MSEQ [not used alone]

5-24 46882-225U

Select sequencing mode of operation. When a sequence is selected, the user :MODE

can step through the sequence using the RCL:UP and RCL:DN commands. The sequence modes are SEQ1 to SEQ9, and the sequencing can be disabled

with the OFF parameter.

Data type : Character Program Data

Allowed suffices: None Default suffix: None

> Examples: MSEQ:MODE OFF MSEQ:MODE SEQ2

:SEQ1...:SEQ9 :START :STOP

Set the memory store for the start of the sequencing loop Set the memory store for the end of the sequencing loop

Data type: Decimal Numeric Program Data

Allowed suffices : None Default suffix: None

> Example: MSEQ:SEQ2:START 50;STOP 70

MSEQ? Prepares message containing information on the current memory sequencing

> mode in the following format: :MSEQ:MODE <mode>

where: <mseq> is character program data indicating the sequence mode

Examples: :MSEQ:MODE SEQ4

:MSEQ:MODE OFF

MSEQ:SEQ1? Prepares message containing information on the start and stop settings of the

> given memory sequence in the following format: :MSEQ:SEQn:START <nr1>;STOP <nr1>

MSEQ:SEQ9? where n is between 1 and 9 inclusive

Example: :MSEQ:SEQ4:START 120;STOP 155

#### **Memory - triggering**

**MTRIG** 

Enables memory recall triggering to be activated by \*TRG command or by :ON

external triggering. The triggering order of priority is as follows:

FSK logic input Memory recall Sweep trigger

Therefore ensure that FSK is not enabled, otherwise selecting memory recall

triggering will have no effect.

Disable memory recall triggering :OFF

> Data type: None Allowed suffices: None Default suffix: None

> > Examples: MTRIG: ON

MTRIG:OFF

MTRIG? Prepares message containing information on memory triggering state in the

following format:

:MTRIG:<status>

where: <status> is a program mnemonic indicating whether the memory

recall triggering is enabled (:ON) or disabled (:OFF)

Example: :MTRIG:ON

#### **Memory - protection**

**MPROT** [not used alone]

Set the start of the memory block which is to be protected/unprotected :START Set the end of the memory block which is to be protected/unprotected :STOP

> Data type: Decimal Numeric Program Data

Allowed suffices : None Default suffix: None

Set memory protection ON for the selected memory block :ON

Set memory protection OFF (i.e. unprotected) for the selected memory block :OFF

> Data type: None Allowed suffices : None Default suffix: None

> > MPROT:START 100;STOP 150 MPROT:ON Examples:

5-26 46882-225U

#### **Sweep operation**

To make these commands operational they must first be enabled by the CFRQ:MODE SWEPT command.

SWEEP [not used alone]

:CFRQ Optional command (may be omitted)

:START Set Start Frequency :STOP Set Stop Frequency

:INC Set Carrier Frequency sweep step size

Data type: Decimal Numeric Program Data

Allowed suffices: Any one of: GHZ, MHZ, KHZ or HZ

Default suffix: HZ

:LOGINC PCT

:TIME Select time per sweep step

Data type : Decimal Numeric Program Data

Allowed suffices : MS, S

Default suffix : MS

Example: SWEEP:CFRQ:START 100KHZ;STOP 500KHZ;INC

100HZ;TIME 60MS

**SWEEP:CFRQ?** Prepares message containing information on Carrier Frequency Sweep settings

in the following format:

 $:SWEEP:CFRQ:START<\\ nr2>;STOP<\\ nr2>;INC<\\ nr2>;$ 

 $LOGINC \!\!<\!\! nr2 \!\!>; \! TIME <\!\! nr2 \!\!>$ 

**Example**: :SWEEP:CFRQ:START 1230000.0;STOP 1330000.0;INC

100.0; LOGINC 50.00; TIME 20.0

#### Sweep mode

To make these commands operational they must first be enabled by the CFRQ:MODE SWEPT command. Note that for triggering the order of priority is as follows:

FSK logic input Memory recall Sweep trigger

Therefore ensure that FSK and memory recall are not enabled, otherwise selecting sweep triggering will have no effect.

SWEEP [not used alone]

:MODE Select Mode of operation for Sweep generator (single or continuous)

Data type: Character Program Data (either SNGL or CONT)

Allowed suffices : None Default suffix : None

Example: SWEEP: MODE SNGL

:TYPE Select type of sweep (linear or logarithmic)

Data type: Character Program Data (LIN or LOG)

Allowed suffices: None Default suffix: None

Example: SWEEP: TYPE LOG

:TRIG

Data type: Character Program Data (any one of OFF, START, STARTSTOP, STEP)

Allowed suffices : Default suffix: None

> Example: SWEEP: TRIG STARTSTOP

SWEEP? Prepares message containing information on Sweep Mode Type and Trigger

in the following format:

:SWEEP:MODE <mode>;TYPE<type>;TRIG <trig>

<mode> is character program data indicating the sweep mode

selected,<type> is character program data indicating type selected, and <trig> is character program data indicating the

trigger type selected

Example: :SWEEP:MODE CONT; TYPE LOG; TRIG STEP

#### **Sweep control**

**SWEEP** [not used alone]

Commence Sweep :GO :HALT Pause Sweep Continue Sweep :CONT

Reset sweep to Start Value :RESET Return to original setting :RETN

Transfer current value as the new setting :XFER :UP Go UP one sweep step while paused Go DOWN one sweep step while paused :DN

> Data type: None Allowed suffices: None Default suffix: None

> > SWEEP:GO SWEEP:RESET Examples:

5-28 46882-225U

#### Miscellaneous commands

**ERROR?** Prepares message relating to the next error in the error queue in the following

format:

<nr1>, <string>

Where <string> is a descriptive error message. The numeric value returned is

that of the next error number, or 0 if the queue is empty, or 399 if the queue is

Example: 100, "Carrier Limit"

**GPIB** Set the GPIB Address (between 0 and 30 inclusive)

> Data type: Decimal Numeric Program Data

Allowed suffices : None Default suffix : None

> Example: GPIB 7

**RPP** Reset reverse power protection trip (short form)

:RESET Reset RPP trip

> Data type: Allowed suffices: None Default suffix : None

> > Example: RPP:RESET

RPP:TRIPPED? Prepares message containing information on whether the RPP Circuitry is

currently tripped in the following format:

<nr1>

(0 = not tripped, 1 = tripped)

Example:

RPP:COUNT? Prepares message containing information on the number of times the RPP

crcuitry has tripped in the following format:

Example: 3

**FSTD** Select internal or external frequency standard

> Data type: Character program data (any one of INT, EXT10DIR, EXT11ND, EXT10IND or INT10OUT)  $\,$

Allowed suffices: None Default suffix: None

> Examples: FSTD INT

FSTD EXT10IND

FSTD? Prepares message containing information on frequency standard selection in

the format:

:FSTD <char>

Example: :FSTD EXT10IND

**BLANK**Blank or unblank display parameters: Carrier Frequency, RF Level,

Modulation Depth and Deviations, and Modulation Frequency

Data type : None
Allowed suffices : None
Default suffix : None

Examples: BLANK: ON

BLANK:OFF

**BLANK?** Prepares message containing information on the display blanking setting in the

following format:

:BLANK:<state>

where: <state> is program mnemonic indicating whether the blanking is ON

or OFF

Examples: BLANK:OFF

**CONTRAST** Sets the LCD contrast, over a scale of 0 to 255

Data type: Decimal Numeric Program Data

Allowed suffices : none

Default suffix : none

Examples: CONTRAST 120

**CONTRAST?** Prepares message containing information on LCD contrast setting in the

following format:

:CONTRAST <nr1>

Example: :CONTRAST 78

**ELAPSED** 

:RESET Reset elapsed operating hours to zero

Data type : None
Allowed suffices : None
Default suffix : None

Example: ELAPSED: RESET

**ELAPSED?** Prepares message containing information on elapsed operating hours since last

reset. Fractional part is in 15 minute intervals (0.25, 0.50, 0.75). Format is as

follows: <nr2>

Example: 454.50

**OPER?** Prepares message containing information on total operating hours. Fractional

part is in 15 minute intervals (0.25, 0.50, 0.75). Format is as follows:

<nr2>

Example: 1453.00

5-30 46882-225U

REMOTE OPERATION

KLOCK Disables keyboard entry except RPP Reset and Go to Local

 $\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Data type}: & \text{None} \\ \text{Allowed suffices}: & \text{None} \\ \text{Default suffix}: & \text{None} \end{array}$ 

KUNLOCK Enables keyboard entry

 $\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Data type} : & \text{None} \\ \text{Allowed suffices} : & \text{None} \\ \text{Default suffix} : & \text{None} \end{array}$ 

POWUP [not used alone]

:MODE Select the power up mode. The instrument can power up in either the factory

preset mode or from a selected memory

Data type: Character program data (FACTORY or MEMORY)

Allowed suffices: None Default suffix: None

:MEM Set the memory location for a memory power up

Data type: Decimal Numeric Program Data

Allowed suffices: None Default suffix: None

Examples: POWUP: MODE MEMORY

POWUP:MEM 172

**POWUP?** Prepares message containing information on the instrument power up selection

in the following format:

Example: :POWUP:MODE MEMORY;MEM 135

ATTEN [not used alone]
:LOCK Lock the attenuators

:UNLOCK Unlock the attenuators

Data type : None
Allowed suffices : None
Default suffix : None

Example: ATTEN:LOCK

ATTEN? Prepares message containing information on whether the attenuators are

locked or unlocked in the following format:

:ATTEN:<status>

where <status> is a program mnemonic indicating whether the attenuators

are locked or unlocked

Example: :ATTEN:LOCK

**IMPEDANCE** Set  $50 \Omega$  or  $75 \Omega$  adapter mode

Data type: Character program data (Z50R or Z75R)

Allowed suffices : None Default suffix : None

Example: IMPEDANCE Z75R

**IMPEDANCE?** Prepares message containing information on which adapter mode is selected in

the following format:

:IMPEDANCE <char>

Example: :IMPEDANCE Z75R

5-32 46882-225U

#### Status byte

The Status Byte provides information about events and conditions within the instrument. It may be read by a conventional Serial Poll or its value obtained as a response to the \*STB? query. Bits 0 to 5 and bit 7 are each single bit Summary Messages which may be of two types (or not used at all).

- (i) Queue Status a '1' indicates that an associated Queue is non-empty and has data available to be read.
- (ii) Status Register Summary reports the occurrence of an enabled event monitored by a Status Register Structure.

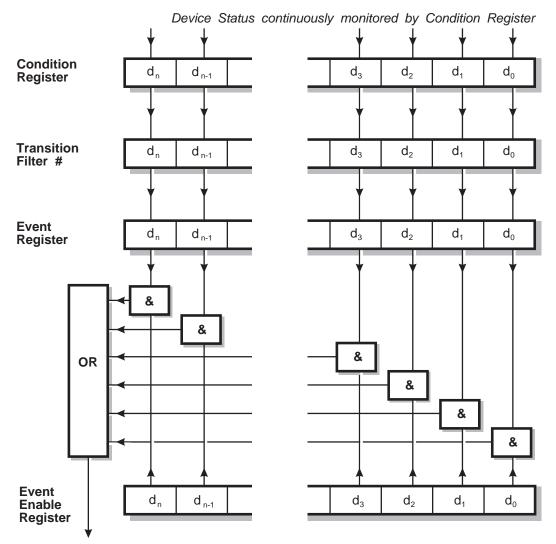
The Service Request Enable Register determines which of the bits can generate an SRQ. This register may be set by \*SRE or read by \*SRE? If the bitwise -AND of the Status Byte and the Enable Register is non-zero the Flag Master Summary Status (<mss>) is True. Bit 6 of the Status Byte value read by \*STB? holds <mss>. However bit 6 of the Status Byte when Serial Polled is the Request For Service bit used to determine which device on the Bus has asserted SRQ, and is cleared by a Serial Poll.

The IEEE 488.2 Standard defines bit 4 as Message Available (<mav>), the Queue Summary for the Output Buffer, indicating whether any part of a Response Messages is available to be read. Bit 5 is the Event Summary Bit (<esb>), the Summary Message from the Standard Event Status Register.

With this instrument, bit 7 is a Queue Summary for the Error Queue. Bits 1, 2, and 3 are Status summaries for the Instrument Status, Coupling Status and Hardware Status Registers. Bit 0 is unused.

#### Status data structure - register model

Below is a generalised model of the Register Set which funnels the monitored data into a single summary bit to set the appropriate bit in the Status Byte.



**Summary Message** 

C0072

**Notes** 

The Device Status is continuously monitored by the Condition Register. If a Query to read a Condition Register is provided, the Response represents the Status of the instrument at themoment the Response is generated. A Condition Register cannot be written to.

The Transition Filter determines which transition of the Condition Register data bits will set the corresponding bit in the Event Register. Either positive-going, negative-going or both transitions can set bits in an Event Register. But with this instrument the Transition Filters are pre-set as either Positive or Negative, as described in the following pages.

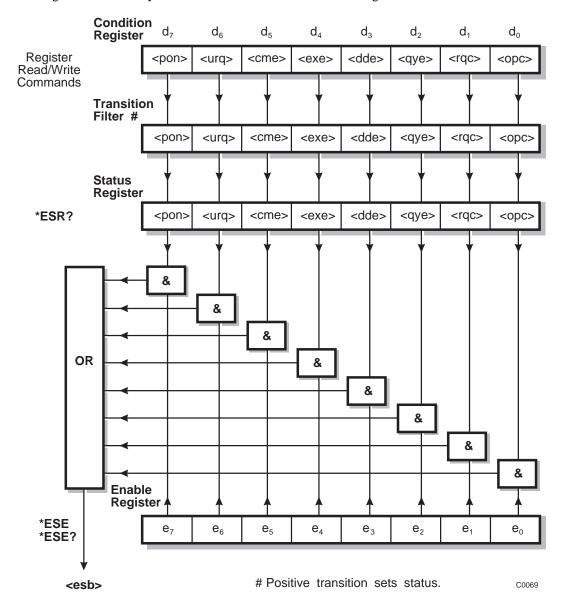
The bits in an Event Register are "latched". Once set they remain set, regardless of subsequent changes in the associated condition bit until the Event Register is cleared by being read or by the \*CLS common command. Once cleared, an Event Register bit will only be set again if the appropriate change in the Condition bit occurs.

The Event Enable Register may be both written to and read from. It is bitwise AND-ed with the Event Register and if the result is non-zero the Summary Message is true, otherwise the Summary Message is false. Enable Registers are not affected by \*CLS but are however clear at power-on.

5-34 46882-225U

#### Standard event registers

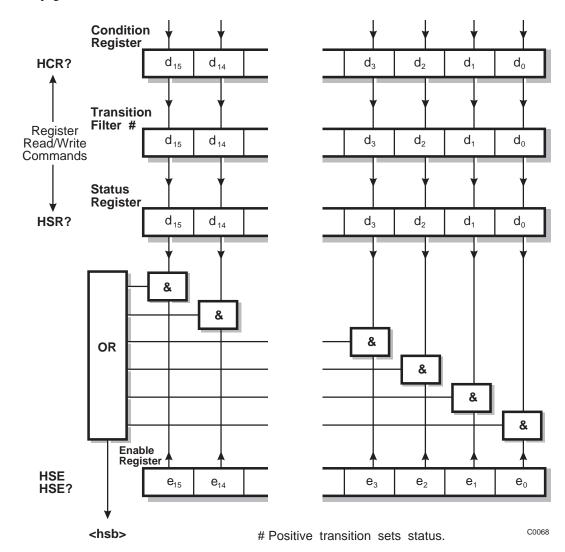
This register is defined by IEEE 488.2 and each bit has the meaning shown below:-



<pon> power on user request - not implemented in this product <urq> command error <cme> <exe> execution error <dde> device dependent error <qye> request control - not implemented in this product <rqc> <opc> operation complete - set in response to the \*OPC command for synchronisation. standard event register summary bit <esb>

#### Hardware event registers

This is a device dependent register and the bits have meanings as shown in the list at the bottom of the page.



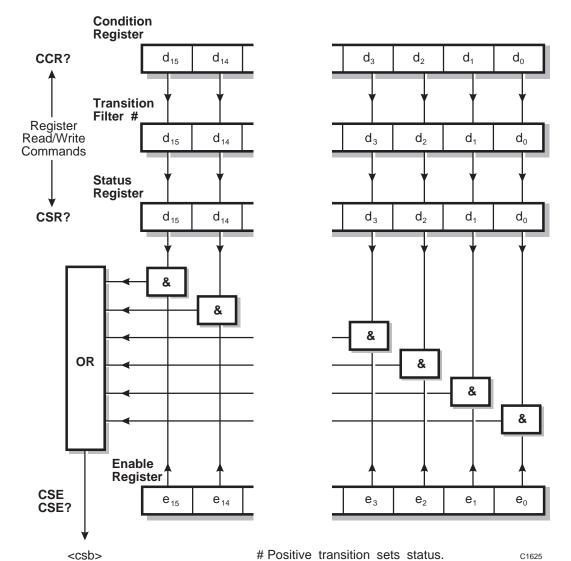
 $d_0$ reverse power protection tripped dg filter unlevelled  $d_1$ fractional-n loop low dg output unlevelled high power amplifier failed  $d_2$ fractional-n loop high d<sub>10</sub> external standard missing ALC too high  $d_3$ d<sub>11</sub> external standard frequency too low ALC too low  $d_4$ d<sub>12</sub> external standard frequency too high d<sub>13</sub> DSP not responding  $d_5$ VCXO loop low RF level uncalibrated d<sub>14</sub>  $d_6$ VCXO loop high not used  $d_7$ d<sub>15</sub>

<hsb> hardware event register summary bit

5-36 46882-225U

#### **Coupling event registers**

This is a device dependent register and the bits have meanings as shown in the list at the bottom of the page.



 $d_0$  RF level restricted by requested AM depth

d<sub>1</sub> not used

d<sub>2</sub> not used

d<sub>3</sub> AM2 depth restricted by requested AM1 depth

d<sub>4</sub> FM2 deviation restricted by requested FM1 deviation

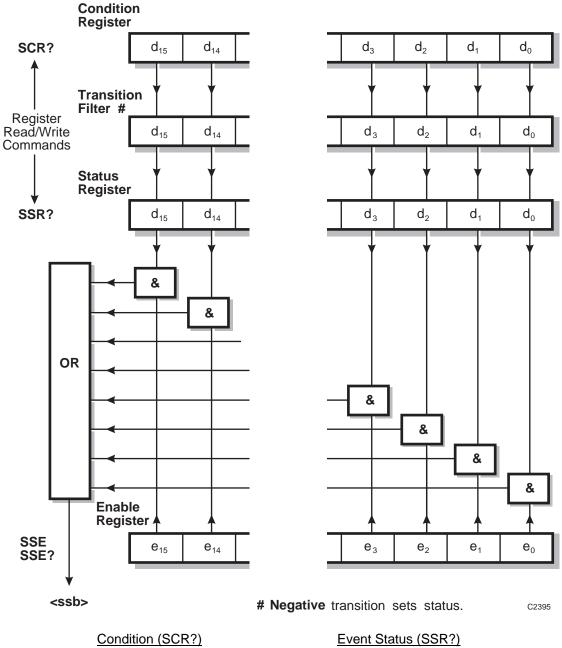
d<sub>5</sub>  $\Phi$ M2 deviation restricted by requested  $\Phi$ M1 deviation

 $d_6$  not used  $d_7 - d_{15}$  not used

<csb> coupling event register summary bit

## Instrument event registers

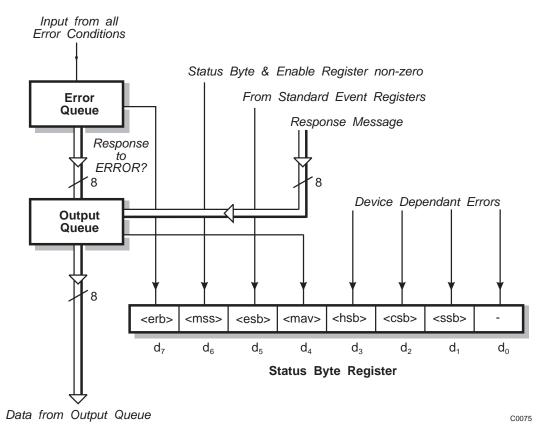
This is a device dependent register and the bits have meanings as shown in the list at the bottom of the page.



	Condition (SCR?)	Event Status (SSR?)
$d_0$	sweep in progress	end of sweep
$d_1$	not used	not used
$d_2$	selfcal in progress	selfcal completed
$d_3$	DC FM null in progress	DC FM null completed
d <sub>4</sub> - d <sub>15</sub>	not used	not used
<ssb></ssb>	instrument event register summary bit	

5-38 46882-225U

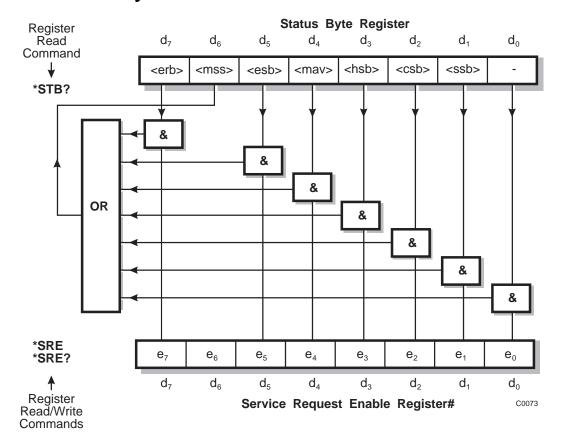
#### **Queue flag details**



The <mav> status bit is set when one or more bytes are available to be read from the Output Queue.

The <erb> status bit is set when one or more errors are present in the Error Queue. The ERROR? query will place a nr1 and string response message in the Output Queue representing the error at the head of the queue. If the queue is empty this message will be 0, "No error".

#### Status byte when read by \*STB?



# Bit 6 in this register ignores data sent by \*SRE and always returns 0 in response to \*SRE?

<rgs>, <esb> and <mav> are defined in IEEE 488.2

<erb> is a device defined queue summary bit indicating that the error queue is non-empty.

<mss> is true when (Status Byte) AND (Enable register) > 0.

<esb> is the standard event register summary bit.

<mav> is 'message available' indicating that the output queue is non-empty.

<hsb> is 'hardware status' summary bit

<csb> is 'coupling status' summary bit

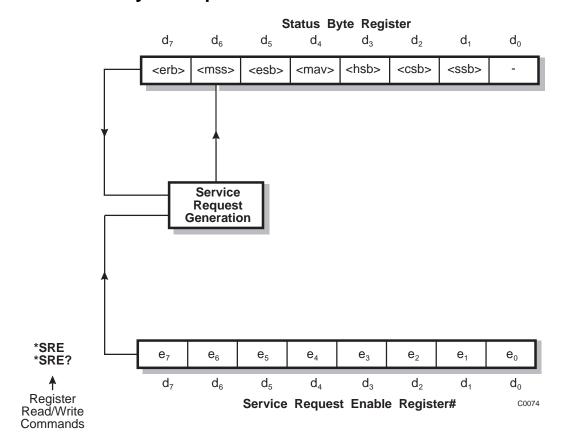
<ssb> is 'instrument status' summary bit

Note

The Status Byte Register is Not cleared by the \*STB? query.

5-40 46882-225U

#### Status byte when read by serial poll



# Bit 6 in this register ignores data sent by \*SRE and always returns 0 in response to \*SRE?

<erb> is a device defined queue summary bit indicating that the error queue is non-empty.

<rqs> is set by a request for service and is cleared by the poll.

<esb> is the standard event register summary bit.

<mav> is 'message available' indicating that the output queue is non-empty.

<hsb> is 'hardware status' summary bit

<csb> is 'coupling status' summary bit

<ssb> is 'instrument status' summary bit

<rqs>, <esb> and <mav> are defined in IEEE 488.2

<rqs> (request for service) will produce an SRQ at the controller. It is set by a change to either the Status Byte or the Service Enable Register that results in a New Reason for Service. It is cleared when <mss> goes FALSE (i.e. no reason for service) or by Serial Poll.

#### Summary of status reporting commands and queries

\*CLS Clears Status Registers and the Error Queue

\*ESE<nrf> Writes to Standard Event Enable Register

\*ESE? Reads from Standard Event Enable Register

\*ESR? Reads from Standard Event Status Register

\*SRE<nrf> Writes to Service Request Enable Register

\*SRE? Reads from Service Request Enable Register

\*STB? Reads from Status Byte Register

CCR? Reads from Coupling Condition Register
 CSE
 Writes to Coupling Status Enable Register
 CSE? Reads from Coupling Status Enable Register

CSR? Reads from Coupling Status Register
HCR? Reads from Hardware Condition Register

HSE<nrf> Writes to Hardware Status Enable RegisterHSE? Reads from Hardware Status Enable Register

HSR? Reads from Hardware Status Register

SCR? Reads from Instrument Condition Register

SSE<nrf> Writes to Instrument State Enable Register
 SSE? Reads from Instrument State Enable Register
 SSR? Reads from Instrument State Status Register

<nrf> Decimal Numeric Program Data

All of the above queries respond with a nr1 numeric format.

5-42 46882-225U

# TECHNICAL ESCRIPTION

# Chapter 6 BRIEF TECHNICAL DESCRIPTION

#### **Contents**

Introduction	6-1
Modulation	6-1
Frequency generation	6-1
Display	
Control	

#### List of figures

Fig.	6-1	Block schematic diagram	6-	.2

#### Introduction

The 2023 and 2024 Signal Generators cover the wide range of frequencies from 9 kHz to 1.2 GHz (2023) and to 2.4 GHz (2024). Output levels range from -140 dBm to +13 dBm (with Option 3 fitted +25 dBm). A block schematic for the instrument is shown in Fig. 6-1.

#### Modulation

The carrier frequency can be frequency, phase or amplitude modulated from internal or external sources. The internal source can be the sum of two signals and used in combination with an external source connected to the front panel EXT MOD INPUT connector. In addition to analogue FM, 2-level and 4-level FSK signals are available, using rear panel logic inputs.

## Frequency generation

A voltage controlled oscillator (VCO) covering the frequency range 400 to 533 MHz is phase locked to a 10 MHz temperature compensated crystal oscillator using a fractional-N synthesizer system. Additional frequency coverage is achieved by means of frequency division or multiplication. Low frequencies are generated by a beat frequency oscillator (BFO) system.

#### **Display**

The display is a high definition dot matrix liquid crystal panel with backlighting to cater for variations in ambient light conditions. The display contrast can be adjusted.

#### **Control**

The instrument uses function keys for setting the main parameters of a generated signal in conjunction with an extensive set of utility menus. Internal control of the instrument is achieved by a microprocessor which receives data from the various controls and sends instructions via an internal 8-bit data bus to the signal processing circuits.

The instruments can also be controlled by the built-in General Purpose Interface Bus (GPIB) or the RS-232 interface. The interfaces enable the instrument to be used both as a manually operated bench mounted instrument and as part of a fully automated test system.

46882-225U 6-1

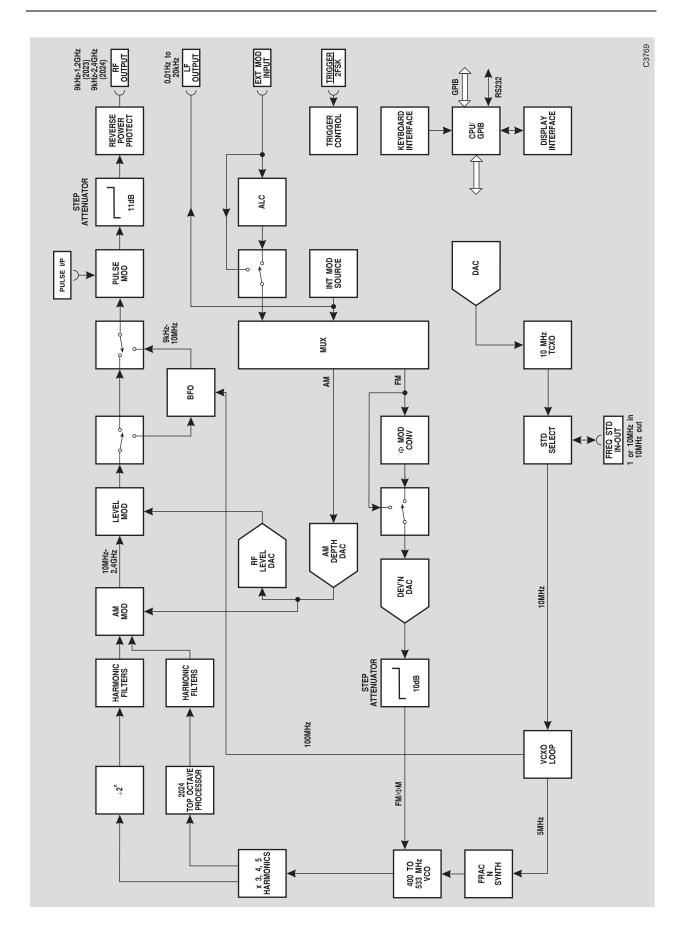


Fig. 6-1 Block schematic diagram

6-2 46882-225U

# CCEPTANCE

# Chapter 7 ACCEPTANCE TESTING

## **Contents**

Introduction	7-4
Test precautions	7-4
Recommended test equipment	7-5
TEST PROCEDURES	7-0
RF output	
RF level frequency response	
ALC linearity	
Attenuator accuracy	
Carrier frequency accuracy	
Spectral purity	
Harmonics	
Non-harmonics	
Residual FM	7-12
SSB phase noise	
RF leakage	
Internal FM	
FM deviation and distortion	
FM scale shape	7-16
Carrier error	
External FM frequency response (ALC off, DC coupled)	
External FM frequency response (ALC on)	
Phase modulation	
Phase modulation	7-19
Phase modulation flatness	7-19
Amplitude modulation	7-20
AM depth and distortion	
AM scale shape	7-21
External AM frequency response (ALC off, DC coupled)	7-22
Pulse modulation	
Pulse modulation RF level frequency response	7-24
Pulse modulation on/off ratio	7-25
Pulse modulation rise and fall time	7-26
Modulation oscillator	7-26
Modulation oscillator frequencies	7-27
Modulation oscillator distortion and LF output flatness	7-28
External frequency standard input	7-28
TEST PROCEDURES FOR INSTRUMENTS FITTED WITH OPTION 3	
RF output	7-30
RF level frequency response	
ALC linearity	7-31
Attenuator accuracy	
Carrier harmonics	
ACCEPTANCE TEST RESULTS TABLES OPTION 3	7-59
_ := := := = = = = = = = : : : : : : : :	

46882-225U 7-1

## List of tables

Table 7-1 RF output at 0 dBm (not option 3)	
Table 7-2 RF output at +7 dBm (not option 3)	7-34
Table 7-3 RF output at +13 dBm (not option 3)	
Table 7-4 ALC linearity at 2.5 MHz (not option 3)	7-36
Table 7-5 ALC linearity at 500 MHz (not option 3)	
Table 7-6 ALC linearity at 2400 MHz (not option 3)	
Table 7-7 Attenuator test at 2.6 MHz (not option 3)	7-39
Table 7-8 Attenuator test at 540 MHz (not option 3)	
Table 7-9 Attenuator test at 1140 MHz (not option 3)	
Table 7-10 Attenuator test at 1740 MHz (2024 only, not option 3)	7-40
Table 7-11 Attenuator test at 2400 MHz (2024 only, not option 3)	7-41
Table 7-12 Alternative attenuator functional test at 10 MHz	7-41
Table 7-13 Carrier frequency tests	
Table 7-14 Carrier harmonic tests at -4 dBm (not option 3)	7-43
Table 7-15 Carrier harmonic tests at 0 dBm (not option 3)	7-44
Table 7-16 Carrier harmonic tests at +7 dBm (not option 3)	7-45
Table 7-17 Carrier non-harmonic tests	
Table 7-18 Residual FM test	
Table 7-19 SSB phase noise test	7-46
Table 7-20 RF leakage test	
Table 7-21 Internal FM deviation and distortion tests at 100 kHz deviation	
Table 7-22 FM scale shape tests at 15 MHz carrier	
Table 7-23 Carrier error test at 1.2 GHz, FM deviation 100 kHz	7-48
Table 7-24 External FM frequency response (ALC off, DC coupled), 50 kHz deviation	7-48
Table 7-25 External FM frequency response (ALC on), 10 kHz deviation, 0.75 V input	7-49
Table 7-26 External FM frequency response (ALC on), 10 kHz deviation, 1.25 V input	7-49
Table 7-27 Internal ΦM and distortion test at 10.5 MHz carrier, 10 rad deviation	7-49
Table 7-28 Internal ΦM flatness test	7-50
Table 7-29 Internal AM depth and distortion tests at -4 dBm	7-50
Table 7-30 Internal AM depth and distortion tests at 0 dBm	
Table 7-31 Internal AM depth and distortion tests at +7 dBm	
Table 7-32 AM scale shape test	7-53
Table 7-33 External AM frequency response (ALC off, DC coupled), RF level -4 dBm	7-54
Table 7-34 External AM frequency response (ALC off, DC coupled), RF level +7 dBm	7-54
Table 7-35 Pulse modulation RF output at -7 dBm (not Option 7)	7-55
Table 7-36 Pulse modulation RF output at +4 dBm (not Option 7)	7-56
Table 7-37 Pulse modulation on/off ratio test (not Option 7)	7-57
Table 7-38 Pulse modulation rise and fall time test (not Option 7)	7-57
Table 7-39 Modulation oscillator frequency tests	7-57
Table 7-40 Modulation oscillator distortion and LF output tests	7-58
Table 7-41 External frequency standard tests	7-58
Table 7-42 RF output at 0 dBm	7-59
Table 7-43 RF output at +7 dBm	7-60
Table 7-44 RF output at +13 dBm	7-61
Table 7-45 RF output at +25 dBm	
Table 7-46 ALC linearity at 2.5 MHz	
Table 7-47 ALC linearity at 500 MHz	
Table 7-48 ALC linearity at 2400 MHz	
Table 7-49 Attenuator test at 2.6 MHz	
Table 7-50 Attenuator test at 540 MHz	7-66
Table 7-51 Attenuator test at 1140 MHz	7-67
Table 7-52 Attenuator test at 1740 MHz (2024 only)	
Table 7-53 Attenuator test at 2400 MHz (2024 only)	
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	7-69

7-2 46882-225U

# CCEPTANCE TESTING

## List of figures

Fig. 7-1	RF output test set-up	7-7
Fig. 7-2	RF output test set-up	7-8
Fig. 7-3	Carrier frequency accuracy test set-up	7-10
Fig. 7-4	Carrier harmonics and non-harmonics test set-up	7-11
Fig. 7-5	Residual FM test set-up	7-12
Fig. 7-6	SSB phase noise test set-up	7-13
Fig. 7-7	RF leakage test set-up	7-14
Fig. 7-8	Internal modulation and modulation distortion test set-up	7-15
Fig. 7-9	External modulation and modulation distortion test set-up	7-17
Fig. 7-10	0 Hz external AM and distortion test set-up	7-23
Fig. 7-11	Pulse modulation test set-up	7-24
Fig. 7-12	Pulse modulation on/off ratio test set-up	7-25
Fig. 7-13	Pulse modulation rise and fall time test set-up	7-26
Fig. 7-14	Modulation oscillator frequency test set-up	7-27
Fig. 7-15	Modulation oscillator distortion test set-up	7-28
Fig. 7-16	External standard test set-up.	7-28
Fig. 7-17	RF output test set-up	7-30
Fig. 7-18	Carrier harmonics test set-up	7-32

46882-225U 7-3

### Introduction

The test procedures in this chapter enable you to verify that the electrical performance of the signal generator complies with the Performance Data given in Chapter 1. For convenience, the test equipment and specification for each test are summarised before the test procedure.

Apart from the UUT, (Unit Under Test), no specific set-up procedures will be included for the test equipment unless the measurement is dependant on specific instrument settings or special measurement techniques.

# **Test precautions**

To ensure minimum errors and uncertainties when making measurements, it is important to observe the following precautions:-

- (1) Always use recently calibrated test equipment, with any correction figures taken into account, so as to establish a known traceable limit of performance uncertainty. This uncertainty must be allowed for in determining the accuracy of measurements.
- (2) A common external frequency standard, with an accuracy of  $\pm 1$  part in  $10^9$  should be used for any frequency controlled test equipment.
- (3) Use the shortest possible connecting leads.
- (4) Some areas of the specification which are labelled *typical* rather than having clearly defined limits are *not* tested.

7-4 46882-225U

# ACCEPTANC TESTING

# Recommended test equipment

The test equipment recommended for acceptance testing is shown below. Alternative equipment may be used provided it complies with the stated minimum specification.

#### Recommended test equipment

Description	Minimum specification	Example
Power meter	±0.1 dB from 10 kHz to 2.4 GHz	IFR <sup>†</sup> 6960B with 6912 and 6932 sensors #
Measuring receiver	0 dBm to -127 dBm; 2.5 MHz to 2.4 GHz. Capable of measuring residual FM <2 Hz and SSB phase noise <-124 dBc/Hz at 20 kHz offset from a 1 GHz carrier	HP 8902A with option 037 * and 11722A sensor and 11793A down converter ##
Signal generator	+8 dBm from 32.5 MHz to 2.43 GHz	IFR <sup>†</sup> 2041
Frequency counter	10 Hz to 2.4 GHz	IFR <sup>†</sup> 2440
Audio analyser	Capable of measuring THD of 0.01% from 100 Hz to 20 kHz	Rhode & Schwarz UPA3
Spectrum analyser	DC to 7.2 GHz, 3 Hz resolution bandwidth	IFR <sup>†</sup> 2386
Modulation meter	AM, FM and $\Phi \text{M}$ 50 kHz to 2.4 GHz, accuracy $\pm 1\%$ at 1 kHz modulation frequency.	IFR <sup>†</sup> 2305 plus distortion option **
Function generator	DC to 100 kHz sine, $\pm 0.6$ dB flatness, 100 kHz square wave	HP 3325B
Digital voltmeter	DC voltage measurement	Solartron 7150+
50 $\Omega$ load (termination)	1 W, 50 $\Omega$ nominal impedance, DC to 2.4 GHz	Lucas Weinschel M1404N
2 turn loop	25 mm diameter	
Oscilloscope	100 MHz bandwidth	Tektronix TAS 465

<sup>†</sup>IFR Ltd was previously known as Marconi Instruments Ltd

<sup>#</sup> The 6932 sensor is only required when testing instruments fitted with option 3 (high power).

<sup>\*</sup> Option 037 is necessary to measure SSB phase noise.

<sup>##</sup> If the receiver and down converter are not available, an alternative procedure to ensure attenuator pad accuracy using a power meter is given.

<sup>\*\*</sup> The distortion option of the 2305 Modulation Meter allows modulation distortion tests to be carried out with greater ease. If a 2305 with the distortion option is not available, the audio analyzer may be connected to the modulation meter LF output and set to measure distortion.

# **TEST PROCEDURES**

Each test procedure relies on the UUT being set to its power-up conditions. To avoid switching the instrument off and back on, reset the UUT by selecting:

# [RCL] 999 [ENTER]

At the end of this chapter are a set of results Table 7-s which give all the test points for each of the tests. These Table 7-s should be photocopied and used to record the results of all the measurements taken.

Tests for the options, where necessary, are included with the tests for the standard instrument, with the exception of the following:

Option 3 (high power option) which has a dedicated chapter at the end of the procedures for RF level accuracy and carrier harmonics.

Option 7 (fast pulse modulation) whose tests are included in Annex B.

Option 11 (fast pulse and high power) whose tests are included in Annex C.

# **RF** output

# **Specification**

**Level range:** -140 dBm to +13 dBm

Accuracy: For output levels above -127 dBm and over a temperature range of

17°C to 27°C:

 $\pm 0.8$  dBm to 1.2 GHz  $\pm 1.6$  dBm to 2.4 GHz (2024)

Temperature coefficient <±0.02 dB/°C to 1.2 GHz ,

<±0.04 dB/°C to 2.4 GHz

Output impedance: 50 ohms

VSWR <1.3:1 to 1.2 GHz

<1.5:1 to 2.4 GHz (2024)

# **Test equipment**

Description	Minimum specification	Example
Power meter	±0.1 dB from 9 kHz to 2.4 GHz	IFR 6960B and 6912
Measuring receiver	0 dBm to -127 dBm; 2.5 MHz to 2.4 GHz	HP 8902A with 11722A sensor and 11793A down converter
Signal generator	+8 dBm from 32.5 MHz to 2.43 GHz	IFR 2041

7-6 46882-225U

# ACCEPTANCE TESTING

# RF level frequency response

(not Option 3, refer to 'Test procedure for instruments fitted with Option 3')

# **Test procedure**

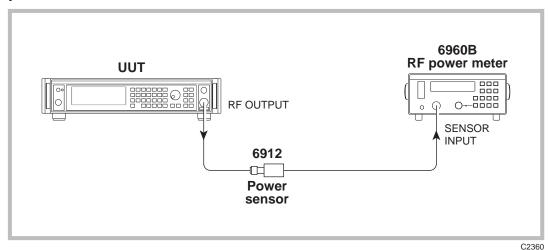


Fig. 7-1 RF output test set-up

- (1) Perform AUTO ZERO and AUTO CAL on the power meter.
- (2) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-1.
- (3) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 30 [kHz] [RF LEVEL] 0 [dB]

- (4) Record the output level measured by the power meter against each of the carrier frequencies shown in Table 7-1, checking that the results are within specification.
- (5) Set the UUT RF level to +7 dBm and repeat (4) using Table 7-2.
- (6) Set the UUT RF level to +13 dBm and repeat (4) using Table 7-3.

# **ALC linearity** (not Option 3, refer to 'Test procedure for instruments fitted with Option 3')

#### Test procedure

- (1) Perform AUTO ZERO and AUTO CAL on the power meter.
- (2) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-1.
- (3) On the UUT set:

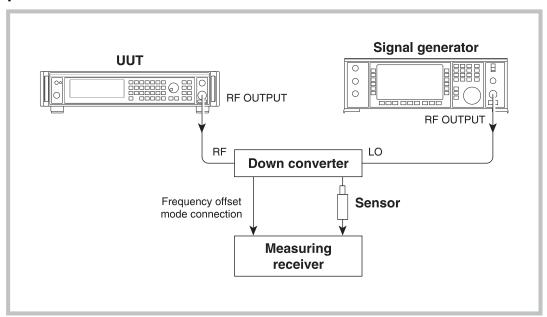
[CARR FREQ] 2.5 [MHz] [RF LEVEL] -4 [dB]

- (4) Record the output level measured by the power meter against each of the steps shown in Table 7-4, checking that the results are within specification.
- (5) Set the UUT carrier frequency to 500 MHz and repeat (4) using Table 7-5.
- (6) Set the UUT carrier frequency to 2400 MHz and repeat (4) using Table 7-6.

# Attenuator accuracy (not Option 3, refer to 'Test procedure for instruments fitted with Option 3') (not required for instruments with Option 1)

The following test will confirm that the attenuator performs to the published performance specification. In the event of the receiver/down-converter not being available, an alternative method to functionally test the individual pads is also suggested (see 'Alternative attenuator functional test' below).

# **Test procedure**



C2849

Fig. 7-2 RF output test set-up

- (1) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-2.
- (2) On the UUT set:

- (3) Tune the receiver to 2.6 MHz and record the output level measured in Table 7-7, checking that the result is within specification.
- (4) Set the UUT RF level to -4.1 dBm. Measure the received level and record the result in Table 7-7, checking that the result is within specification.
- (5) Decrement the UUT, using the [×10 ♣] key, in 11 dB steps down to an RF level of -103.1 dBm measuring the received level at each step shown in Table 7-7, checking that the results are within specification.
- (6) Set the UUT to carrier frequency 540 MHz and repeat (2) to (5) using Table 7-8.
- (7) Set the UUT to carrier frequency 1140 MHz and repeat (2) to (5) using Table 7-9.
  Note that the following test frequencies are for 2024 only. The down converter will automatically be enabled when testing frequencies above 1300 MHz.
- (8) Set the local oscillator to +8 dBm at a carrier frequency of 62 MHz less than the test frequency (i.e. 1678 MHz).

7-8 46882-225U

EPTANCE STING

- (9) On the receiver, enter the local oscillator frequency followed by the test frequency.
- (10) Set the UUT to carrier frequency 1740 MHz and repeat (2) to (5) using Table 7-10.
- (11) Set the UUT to carrier frequency 2400 MHz and repeat (2) to (5) using Table 7-11.

# Alternative attenuator functional test (not required for instruments with Option 1)

- (1) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-1.
- (2) Perform AUTO ZERO and AUTO CAL on the power meter.
- (3) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 10 [MHz] [RF LEVEL] 13 [dB]\*

\*For units fitted with Option 3, high power option, select 7 [dB]

[MENU] 70 [ENTER]

The UUT will enter the Latch Access diagnostic menu.

- (4) Use the  $[\div 10 \ 1]$  and  $[\times 10 \ 1]$  keys to select *RF Board Shift-Reg 1*.
- (5) Press [NEXT] and [NEXT] again to select Data (bin):
- (6) Use the  $[\div 10 \ \ 1]$  and  $[\times 10 \ \ ]$  to move the cursor left and right.
- (7) Set a reference on the power meter such that 0 dB is indicated.
- (8) On the UUT, move the cursor to the MSB and press 0 (<u>0</u>1111111) This will enable the first 33 dB pad.
- (9) Record the relative level measured on the power meter in Table 7-12.

Note that this is a nominal value as no software correction figures are applied to the attenuator when performing this test.

- (10) On the UUT, press 1 to disable the first 33 dB pad.
- (11) Repeat (6) to (10) for the next four MSBs; the 22 dB, 33 dB, 11 dB and 33 dB pads respectively.

# **Carrier frequency accuracy**

This check provides a conventional method of checking the signal generator frequency locking circuitry. It will confirm correct operation of phase locked loops and dividers. Overall accuracy is determined by the instrument's internal reference standard.

# **Specification**

Frequency range: 9 kHz to 1.2 GHz (2023)

9 kHz to 2.4 GHz (2024)

Accuracy: Determined by the frequency standard accuracy

Resolution: 1 Hz

#### **Test equipment**

Description	Minimum specification	Example
Frequency counter	9 kHz to 2.4 GHz	IFR 2440
$50 \Omega$ load (termination)	1 W, 50 $\Omega$ nominal impedance, DC to 2.4 GHz	Lucas Weinschel M1404N

### **Test procedure**

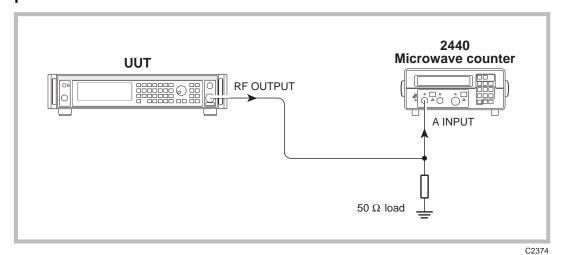


Fig. 7-3 Carrier frequency accuracy test set-up

(1) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-3.

(2) Connect the internal frequency standard from the UUT to the external standard input on the counter.

(3) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 9 [kHz] [RF LEVEL] 0 [dB]

- (4) Record the frequency measured by the counter meter against each of the carrier frequencies shown in Table 7-13. (As the two instruments' frequencies are locked together, the limit is ±1 digit on the counter display.)
- (5) At 1200 MHz disconnect the UUT internal frequency standard from the counter and instead apply the external reference. Check the result against the limits.

**Notes** 

If the instrument is fitted with Option 4, (high stability frequency standard), use the *second* 1200 MHz test limits.

The test limits quoted are for guidance and assume that the internal frequency standard has recently been adjusted. Aging and stability have to be considered when establishing the real test limits (see Performance data' in Chapter 1).

# **Spectral purity**

#### **Specification**

**Harmonics:** Typically better than -30 dBc for RF levels up to +7 dBm

Typically better than -25 dBc for RF levels up to +13 dBm

Non-harmonics: Better than -70 dBc for carrier frequencies up to 1 GHz

Better than -64 dBc for carrier frequencies above 1 GHz Better than -60 dBc for carrier frequencies above 2 GHz

Residual FM: Less than 4.5 Hz RMS in a 300 Hz to 3.4 kHz bandwidth at a carrier

frequency of 1 GHz

SSB phase noise: Better than -124 dBc/Hz at 20 kHz offset from a 470 MHz carrier,

Typically -121 dBc/Hz at 20 kHz offset from a 1 GHz carrier

**RF leakage:** Less than 0.5 μV at the carrier frequency into a two turn 25 mm loop

25 mm away from the surface of the signal generator

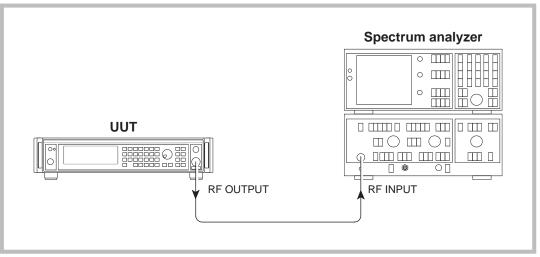
7-10 46882-225U

# **Test equipment**

Description	Minimum specification	Example
Spectrum analyzer	DC to 7.2 GHz frequency coverage	IFR 2386
Measuring receiver	0 dBm to -127 dBm; 2.5 MHz to 2.4 GHz. Capable of measuring residual FM <2 Hz and SSB phase noise <-124 dBc/Hz at 20 kHz offset from a 1 GHz carrier	HP 8902A with option 037
Signal generator	+8 dBm from 32.5 MHz to 2.43 GHz	IFR 2041
50 Ω load	1 W, 50 $\Omega$ nominal impedance, DC to 2.4 GHz	Lucas Weinschel M1404N
2 turn loop	25 mm diameter	

### **Harmonics**

# **Test procedure**



C2363

Fig. 7-4 Carrier harmonics and non-harmonics test set-up

- (1) Press CAL on the spectrum analyzer.
- (2) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-4.
- (3) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 10 [kHz] [RF LEVEL] -4 [dB]

- (4) Measure the level of the second and third harmonics on the spectrum analyzer at each of the carrier frequencies shown in Table 7-14, checking that the results are within specification.
- (5) Set the UUT RF level to 0 dBm and repeat (4) using Table 7-15.
- (6) Set the UUT RF level to +7 dBm and repeat (4) using Table 7-16.

#### **Non-harmonics**

# **Test procedure**

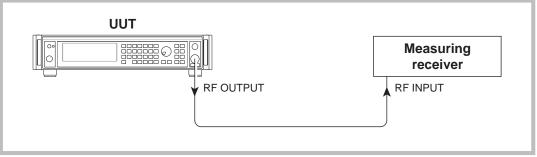
- (1) Press CAL on the spectrum analyzer.
- (2) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-4.
- (3) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 1201 [MHz] [RF LEVEL] 0 [dB]

(4) Measure the level of the non-harmonics on the spectrum analyzer at each of the carrier frequencies shown in Table 7-17, checking that the results are within specification.

#### Residual FM

# **Test procedure**



C2364

Fig. 7-5 Residual FM test set-up

- (1) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-5.
- (2) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 1 [GHz] [RF LEVEL] 0 [dB]

- (3) On the measuring receiver, select FM, 300 Hz high-pass filter, 3.4 kHz low-pass filter and enable averaging.
- (4) Measure the residual FM, checking that the result is within the specification shown in Table 7-18.

7-12 46882-225U

# SSB phase noise

# **Test procedure**

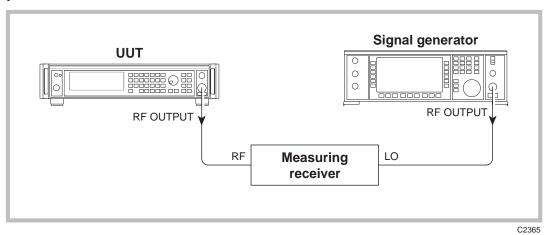


Fig. 7-6 SSB phase noise test set-up

(1) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-6.

(2) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 470 [MHz] [RF LEVEL] 0 [dB]

(3) On the measuring receiver:

Tune the receiver to 470 MHz.

Select 24.0 SPCL to enter selective power measurement mode.

Select 23.1 SPCL to set the LO to external.

(4) Set the signal generator to a carrier frequency of 470.455 MHz, RF level 0 dBm.

(5) On the measuring receiver:

Select 24.5 SPCL to establish the IF reference value (in volts).

Select 24.6 SPCL to set the reference to 0 dBm.

- (6) Fine tune the signal generator frequency until a maximum value is displayed on the measuring receiver.
- (7) On the measuring receiver:

Reselect 24.5 SPCL to establish the IF reference value (in volts).

Reselect 24.6 SPCL to set the reference to 0 dBm.

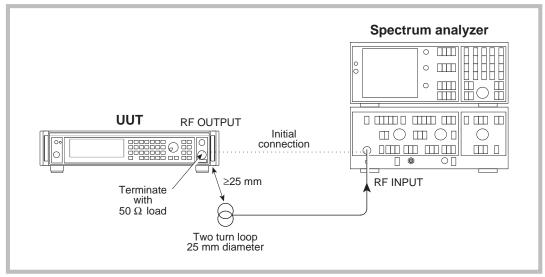
Select 24.7 SPCL to normalize the measurement for a 1 Hz bandwidth.

- (8) Offset the signal generator by 20 kHz.
- (9) Measure the level on the receiver (the SSB phase noise in a 1 Hz bandwidth), checking that the result is within the specification shown in Table 7-19.

ACCEPTANCE TESTING

# RF leakage

# **Test procedure**



C2366

Fig. 7-7 RF leakage test set-up

- (1) Press PRESET then CAL on the spectrum analyzer.
- Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-7. (2)
- On the UUT set: (3)

[CARR FREQ] 469.03 [MHz] [RF LEVEL] -30 [dB]

(4) On the spectrum analyzer select

**REF FREQ** 469.03 MHz SPAN/DIV 10 Hz PEAK FIND

MKR 1 SETS REF FREQ

- Disconnect the cable from the UUT RF output socket and place a 25 mm 2 turn loop on the end of the cable.
- Connect a 50  $\Omega$  sealed load to the UUT RF OUTPUT.
- On the spectrum analyzer select: (7)

VOLTS/DIV

**REF LEVEL**  $0.1 \mu V$ 

2nd FUNCT RF ATTEN ₽ (to set 0 dB input attenuation)

- Hold the 2 turn loop not less than 25 mm from the UUT at various points around its case ensuring that the worst case leakage indicated on the spectrum analyzer does not exceed that shown in Table 7-20.
- Repeat (1) to (8) for each of the carrier frequencies shown in Table 7-20.

7-14 46882-225U

# **Internal FM**

# **Specification**

**Deviation range:** 0 to 100 kHz **Resolution:** 3 digits or 1 Hz

Bandwidth (1 dB): DC to 100 kHz (DC coupled)
10 Hz to 100 kHz (AC coupled)

20 Hz to 100 kHz (AC coupled with ALC)

Accuracy: ±5% at 1 kHz modulation rate

Carrier error: Less than 1% of the set frequency deviation when DC coupled

Distortion: Less than 3% at 1 kHz rate for deviations up to 100 kHz.

Typically 0.5% at 1 kHz rate for deviations up to 10 kHz

External modulation input: 1 V RMS for set deviation

**Modulation ALC:** Levels the applied external modulation over the range 0.75 to 1.25 V

RMS.

FSK: Accepts logic level inputs (1 or 2) to produce an unfiltered FSK

modulated output

# **Test equipment**

Description	Minimum specification	Example
Modulation meter	FM accuracy ±1% at 1 kHz modulation frequency	IFR 2305 with distortion option
DVM	DC voltage measurement	Solartron 7150+
$50 \Omega$ load (termination)	1 W, 50 $\Omega$ nominal impedance, DC to 2.4 GHz	Lucas Weinschel M1404N
Audio analyser	Capable of measuring THD of 0.01% from 100 Hz to 20 kHz	Rhode & Schwarz UPA3
Function generator	DC to 100 kHz sine, ±0.6 dB flatness	HP 3325B

#### FM deviation and distortion

# **Test procedure**

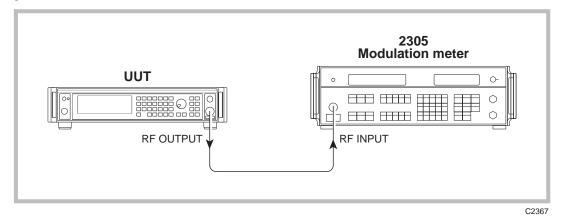


Fig. 7-8 Internal modulation and modulation distortion test set-up

- (1) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-8.
- (2) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 10 [MHz]
[RF LEVEL] 0 [dB]
[MOD] 100 [kHz]
[SOURCE ON/OFF] (to enable modulation source)

- [MOD ON/OFF] (to enable modulation)
- (3) On the modulation meter, select CAL, FM, 50 Hz  $\Rightarrow$  15 kHz filter.
- (4) Measure the FM accuracy and distortion at the carrier frequencies shown in Table 7-21, checking that the results are within specification.

#### FM scale shape

# **Test procedure**

- (1) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-8.
- (2) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 15 [MHz]
[RF LEVEL] 0 [dB]
[MOD] 100 [kHz]
[SOURCE ON/OFF] (to enable modulation source)
[MOD ON/OFF] (to enable modulation)

- (3) On the modulation meter, select CAL, FM, 50 Hz  $\Rightarrow$  15 kHz filter.
- (4) Measure the FM accuracy at the deviations shown in Table 7-22, checking that the results are within specification.

#### **Carrier error**

### Test procedure

- (1) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-8.
- (2) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 1200 [MHz] [RF LEVEL] 0 [dB]

- (3) On the modulation meter select CARRIER ERROR. The FREQUENCY display will read 0.00 kHz.
- (4) On the UUT set:

[MOD] 100 [kHz] [SOURCE ON/OFF] (to enable modulation source) [MOD ON/OFF] (to enable modulation)

[MENU] 20 [ENTER]

The UUT will enter the Modulation Mode menu

Select FM ext using [NEXT]

[MENU] 30 [ENTER]

The UUT will enter the Modulation Source menu

Select *Ext* using [NEXT] Select 2 to select DC coupling

[MENU] 23 [ENTER]

The UUT will select the DC FM Nulling control.

On the modulation meter, measure the carrier frequency error displayed in the FREQUENCY window, checking that the result is within the specification shown in Table 7-23.

7-16 46882-225U

# ACCEPTANC TESTING

# External FM frequency response (ALC off, DC coupled)

# **Test procedure**

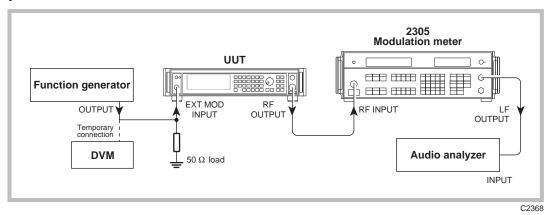


Fig. 7-9 External modulation and modulation distortion test set-up

#### 30 Hz to 100 kHz

- (1) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-9.
- (2) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 15 [MHz]
[RF LEVEL] 0 [dB]
[MOD] 50 [kHz]
[SOURCE ON/OFF] (to enable modulation source)
[MOD ON/OFF] (to enable modulation)
[MENU] 20 [ENTER]

The UUT will enter the Modulation Mode menu

Select FM ext using [NEXT]
[MENU] 30 [ENTER]

The UUT will enter the Modulation Source menu.

Select *Ext* using [NEXT] Select 2 to select DC coupling

- (3) Set the function generator to give 1 V RMS (1 V peak for units with Option 10), 1 kHz sine wave.
- (4) On the modulation meter, select CAL, FM,  $10 \text{ Hz} \Rightarrow 300 \text{ kHz}$  filter.
- (5) On the modulation meter, check that the FM reading is between 47.5 kHz and 52.5 kHz, then set a reference using the relative function.
- (6) Set the function generator to each of the frequencies shown in Table 7-24, checking that the relative readings on the modulation meter are within specification.
- (7) At those frequencies indicated in Table 7-24, set the modulation meter LF output control to mid position and measure the AF distortion on the audio analyzer, checking that the results are within specification.

# 0 Hz (DC)

Note

To measure the FM deviation at DC, it will be necessary to use the DC offset facility on the function generator proceeding as follows:

- (8) Set the function generator to +1.4142 V DC (+1 V DC for units with Option 10). (Temporarily connect the function generator output to the DVM and set this voltage as close as possible to +1.4142 V (+1 V DC for units with Option 10).)
- (9) Press CARRIER ERROR on the modulation meter.
- (10) Set the function generator to -1.4142 V DC (-1 V DC for units with Option 10). (Temporarily connect the function generator output to the DVM and set this voltage as close as possible to -1.4142 V (-1 V DC for units with Option 10).)
- (11) Measure the frequency indicated on the modulation meter carrier frequency window.

(12) Reset the function generator to 1V RMS, 1 kHz sine wave and measure the FM deviation.  $FM2 = \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$ 

(13) Using the following formula, calculate the change in response, checking that the result is within the specification shown against 0 Hz in Table 7-24.

$$20\log_{10}\left\{\frac{FM2}{FM1}\right\}$$

# **External FM frequency response (ALC on)**

# **Test procedure**

- (1) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-9.
- (2) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 15 [MHz]
[RF LEVEL] 0 [dB]
[MOD] 10 [kHz]
[SOURCE ON/OFF] (to enable modulation source)
[MOD ON/OFF] (to enable modulation)
[MENU] 20 [ENTER]

The UUT will enter the Modulation Mode menu.

Select FM ext using [NEXT]
[MENU] 30 [ENTER]

The UUT will enter the Modulation Source menu.

Select *Ext* using [NEXT] Select *I* to select ALC

- (3) Set the function generator to give 0.75 V RMS (0.75 V peak for units with Option 10), 1 kHz sine wave.
- (4) On the modulation meter, select CAL, FM,  $10 \text{ Hz} \Rightarrow 300 \text{ kHz}$  filter.
- (5) On the modulation meter, check that the FM reading is between 9.5 kHz and 10.5 kHz, then set a reference using the relative function.
- (6) Set the function generator to each of the frequencies shown in Table 7-25, checking that the relative readings on the modulation meter are within specification.
- (7) Set the function generator to 1.25 V RMS (1.25 V peak for units with Option 10) and repeat (4) to (6) using Table 7-26, also measuring the AF distortion on the audio analyzer at those frequencies indicated.

7-18 46882-225U

# Phase modulation

# **Specification**

Range: 0 to 10 radians

**Resolution:** 3 digits or 0.01 radians

Bandwidth (3 dB): 10 Hz to 10 kHz

**Accuracy:**  $\pm 5\%$  at 1 kHz modulation rate

**Distortion:** Less than 3% at 10 radians at 1 kHz modulation rate

# **Test equipment**

Description	Minimum specification	Example
Modulation meter	$\Phi \text{M}$ and FM accuracy $\pm 2\%$ at 1 kHz modulation frequency	IFR 2305 with distortion option

# Phase modulation Test procedure

(1) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-8.

(2) On the UUT set:

 [CARR FREQ]
 10.5 [MHz]

 [RF LEVEL]
 0 [dB]

 [MENU]
 20 [ENTER]

The UUT will enter the Modulation Mode menu.

Select  $\Phi M$  int using [NEXT]

[MOD] 10 [rad] [SOURCE ON/OFF] (to enable modulation source)

[MOD ON/OFF] (to enable modulation)

- (3) On the modulation meter, select CAL,  $\Phi$ M.
- (4) Measure the  $\Phi$ M accuracy and distortion, checking that the results are within the specification shown in Table 7-27.

# Phase modulation flatness Test procedure

#### Note

For this test, the phase modulation figures are calculated from readings taken with the modulation meter set to FM. No allowances need to be made for the modulation source frequency accuracy since it is derived from the reference oscillator in the UUT.

(1) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-8.

CCEPTANCE

(2) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 15 [MHz]
[RF LEVEL] 0 [dB]
[MENU] 20 [ENTER]

The UUT will enter the Modulation Mode menu

Select ΦM int using [NEXT]

[MOD] 10 [rad] [SOURCE ON/OFF] (to enable modulation source)

[MOD ON/OFF] (to enable modulation)

- (3) On the modulation meter, select CAL, FM, 50 Hz  $\Rightarrow$  15 kHz LF filter.
- (4) Measure the deviation on the modulation meter and calculate the phase modulation using the formula:

$$\Phi M = \left\{ \frac{FM \text{ dev (Hz)}}{\text{mod freq (Hz)}} \right\}$$

- (5) On the UUT set [MOD SOURCE] to each of the frequencies shown in Table 7-28, measure the deviation on the modulation meter and calculate the phase modulation for each step using the formula in (4).
- (6) Using the figure recorded in (4) as a reference, calculate the change in response at each modulation frequency using the formula:

$$20 \log_{10} \left\{ \frac{\text{Figure recorded in (5)}}{\text{Figure recorded in (4)}} \right\}$$

Check that the results are within the specifications shown in Table 7-28.

# **Amplitude modulation**

# **Specification**

**Range:** 0 to 99.9%

Resolution: 0.1%

Carrier frequency range: <500 MHz usable to 1.5 GHz.

Bandwidth (1 dB): DC to 30 kHz (DC coupled)

10 Hz to 30 kHz (AC coupled)

20 Hz to 30 kHz (AC coupled with ALC)

**Accuracy:**  $\pm 5\%$  of set depth at 1 kHz modulation rate

**Distortion:** For modulation depths up to 80%, less than 2.5% at 1 kHz rate,

for modulation depths up to 30% less than 1.5% at 1 kHz rate.

ΦM on AM: Typically 0.1 radians at 30% depth at 470 MHz

7-20 46882-225U

# **Test equipment**

Description	Minimum specification	Example
Modulation meter	AM accuracy ±1% at 1 kHz modulation frequency	IFR 2305 with distortion option
DVM	DC voltage measurement	Solartron 7150+
$50 \Omega$ load (termination)	1 W, 50 $\Omega$ nominal impedance, DC to 2.4 GHz	Lucas Weinschel M1404N
Audio analyser	Capable of measuring THD of 0.01% from 100 Hz to 20 kHz	Rhode & Schwarz UPA3
Function generator	DC to 30 kHz sine, $\pm 0.6$ dB flatness	HP 3325B

# AM depth and distortion

# **Test procedure**

- (1) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-8.
- (2) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 1.5 [MHz]
[RF LEVEL] -4 [dB]
[MENU] 20 [ENTER]

The UUT will enter the Modulation Mode menu

Select AM int

[MOD] 30 [%] [SOURCE ON/OFF] (to enable modulation source) [MOD ON/OFF] (to enable modulation)

- (3) On the modulation meter, select CAL, AM, 300 Hz  $\Rightarrow$  3.4 kHz LF filter.
- (4) Measure the AM accuracy and distortion at the frequencies shown in Table 7-29, checking that the results are within specification
- (5) Set the UUT to [MOD] 80% and repeat (4).
- (6) Set the UUT to [RF LEVEL] 0 dBm and repeat (2) to (5) using Table 7-30.
- (7) Set the UUT to [RF LEVEL] +7 dBm and repeat (2) to (5) using Table 7-31.

# AM scale shape

# **Test procedure**

(1) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-8.

ACCEP

(2) On the UUT set:

 [CARR FREQ]
 100 [MHz]

 [RF LEVEL]
 0 [dB]

 [MENU]
 20 [ENTER]

The UUT will enter the Modulation Mode menu

Select AM int

[MOD] 1 [%] [SOURCE ON/OFF] (to enable modulation source)

[MOD ON/OFF] (to enable modulation)

- (3) On the modulation meter, select CAL, AM, 300 Hz  $\Rightarrow$  3.4 kHz LF filter.
- (4) Measure the AM accuracy at the depths shown in Table 7-31 checking that the results are within specification.

# **External AM frequency response (ALC off, DC coupled)**

### **Test procedure**

#### 100 Hz to 30 kHz

- (1) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-9.
- (2) On the UUT set:

 [CARR FREQ]
 400 [MHz]

 [RF LEVEL]
 -4 [dB]

 [MENU]
 20 [ENTER]

The UUT will enter the Modulation Mode menu

Select AM ext using [NEXT]

[MOD] 80 [%] 80 [MENU] 30 [ENTER]

The UUT will enter the Modulation Source menu

Select *Ext* using [NEXT]

Select 2 to select DC coupling

[MOD]

[SOURCE ON/OFF] (to enable modulation source)

[MOD ON/OFF] (to enable modulation)

- (3) Set the function generator to give 1 V RMS (+1 V peak for units with Option 10), 1 kHz sine wave.
- (4) On the modulation meter, select CAL, AM,  $10 \text{ Hz} \Rightarrow 300 \text{ kHz}$  filter.
- (5) On the modulation meter, check that the AM reading is between 76% and 84%, then set a reference using the relative function.
- (6) Record the absolute reading for use in the formula in (16).
- (7) Set the function generator to each of the frequencies shown in Table 7-33, checking that the relative readings on the modulation meter are within specification.
- (8) Set the UUT RF level to +7 dBm and repeat (3) to (7) using Table 7-34.

7-22 46882-225U

Fig. 7-10 0 Hz external AM and distortion test set-up

**Note** 

To measure the AM depth at DC, it will be necessary to use the DC offset facility on the function generator proceeding as follows:

- (9) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-10.
- (10) Set the function generator to +1.4142 V DC (+1 V DC for units with Option 10). (Temporarily connect the function generator output to the DVM and set this voltage as close as possible to +1.4142 V (+1 V DC for units with Option 10).)
- (11) Measure the power on the power meter.

- (12) Set the function generator to -1.4142 V DC (-1 V DC for units with Option 10). (Temporarily connect the function generator output to the DVM and set this voltage as close as possible to -1.4142 V (-1 V DC for units with Option 10).)
- (13) Measure the power on the power meter.

- (14) Subtract P2 from P1 (= x)
- (15) Calculate the modulation depth using the formula:

$$AM = (\%) \begin{cases} -10^{(-x/20)} \\ +10^{(-x/20)} \end{cases}$$

(16) Calculate the 0 Hz response relative to 1 kHz using the following formula, recording the result in Table 7-33:

$$20 \log_{10} \left\{ \frac{\text{Figure recorded in (6)}}{\text{Figure recorded in (15)}} \right\}$$

(17) Set the UUT RF level to +7 dBm and repeat (4) to (16) using Table 7-34.

# Pulse modulation (not Option 7 - refer to Annex B) Specification

Carrier frequency range: 32 MHz to 2.4 GHz, usable to 10 MHz

RF level range: Maximum guaranteed output is reduced to +8 dBm when pulse

modulation is selected

**RF level accuracy:** Maximum additional uncertainty is ±0.5 dB

On/off ratio: Better than 40 dB

Better than 45 dB below 1.2 GHz

Rise and fall time: Less than 10  $\mu s$ 

# **Test equipment**

Description	Minimum specification	Example
Power meter	±0.1 dB from 10 kHz to 2.4 GHz	IFR 6960B and 6912
Spectrum analyser	Frequency coverage 32 MHz to 2.4 GHz	IFR 2386 or 2383
$50 \Omega$ load (termination)	1 W, 50 $\Omega$ nominal impedance, DC to 2.4 GHz	Lucas Weinschel M1404N
Oscilloscope	100 MHz bandwidth	Tektronix TAS 465
Function generator	DC to 10 kHz square wave	HP 3325B

# Pulse modulation RF level frequency response

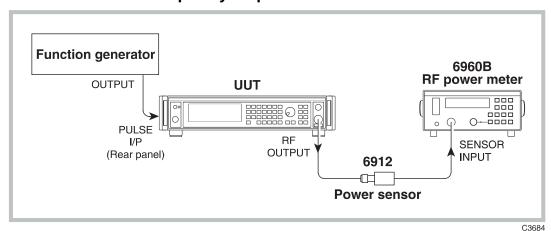


Fig. 7-11 Pulse modulation test set-up

# **Test procedure**

- (1) Perform AUTO ZERO and AUTO CAL on the power meter.
- (2) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-11.
- (3) On the UUT set:

 [CARR FREQ]
 32 [MHz]

 [RF LEVEL]
 -7 [dB]

 [MENU]
 22 [ENTER]

The UUT will enter the *Pulse Modulation* menu.

7-24 46882-225U

Select *I* (to enable Pulse Mod.)
[MOD] then [MOD] then [MOD] again (to select *Pulse Mod*)
[SOURCE ON/OFF] (to enable modulation source)
[MOD ON/OFF] (to enable modulation)

- (4) Set the function generator to provide +5 V DC. The RF output will now be enabled.
- (5) Record the output level measured by the power meter against each of the carrier frequencies shown in Table 7-35, checking that the results are within specification.
- (6) Set the UUT RF level to +4 dBm and repeat (5) using Table 7-36.

#### Pulse modulation on/off ratio

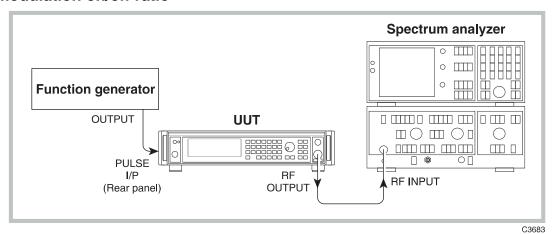


Fig. 7-12 Pulse modulation on/off ratio test set-up

**Test procedure** 

- (1) Press CAL on the spectrum analyzer.
- (2) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-12.
- (3) On the UUT set:

 [CARR FREQ]
 32 [MHz]

 [RF LEVEL]
 0 [dB]

 [MENU]
 22 [ENTER]

The UUT will enter the Pulse Modulation menu

Select 1 (to enable Pulse Mod.)
[MOD] then [MOD] then [MOD] again (to select *Pulse Mod*)
[SOURCE ON/OFF] (to enable modulation source)
[MOD ON/OFF] (to enable modulation)

- (4) Set the function generator to provide +5 V DC. The RF output will now be enabled.
- (5) Tune the spectrum analyzer to the same frequency as the signal generator.
- (6) Press PEAK FIND on the spectrum analyzer and note the output level.
- (7) Apply a short circuit to the PULSE I/P socket on the rear panel.
- (8) Again note the output level measured by the spectrum analyzer.
- (9) The difference between the levels recorded in (6) and (8) is the pulse mod on/off ratio. Check that the ratio is within specification using Table 7-37.

(10) Repeat (5) to (9) for each of the frequencies shown in Table 7-37.

#### Pulse modulation rise and fall time

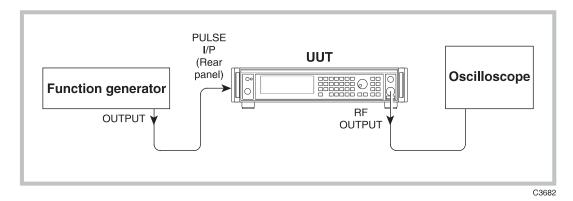


Fig. 7-13 Pulse modulation rise and fall time test set-up

**Test procedure** 

(1) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-13.

(2) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 50 [MHz] [RF LEVEL] +7 [dB] [MENU] 22 [ENTER]

The UUT will enter the Pulse Modulation menu.

Select 1 (to enable Pulse Mod)
[MOD] then [MOD] then [MOD] again (to select Pulse Mod)
[SOURCE ON/OFF] (to enable modulation source)
[MOD ON/OFF] (to enable modulation)

The RF output will now be enabled.

- (3) Set the function generator to produce 10 kHz, 0 V to +5 V square wave.
- (4) Adjust the oscilloscope controls such that the rise time of the envelope can be measured.
- (5) Measure the rise time between the 10% to 90% points, checking that it is within the specification shown in Table 7-38.
- (6) Repeat (4) to (5) for the fall time of the envelope.

# **Modulation oscillator**

# **Specification**

Frequency range: 0.01 Hz to 20 kHz

Resolution: 0.01 Hz to 100 Hz
0.1 Hz to 1 kHz

0.1 Hz to 1 kHz 1 Hz to 20 kHz

**Distortion:** Less than 0.1% at 1 kHz

Sine wave frequency

response:

Typically 1 dB, DC to 20 kHz

7-26 46882-225U

Waveforms:

Sine (to 20 kHz), triangle or square wave (to 3 kHz)

Square wave jitter <6.4 μs on any edge

Output:

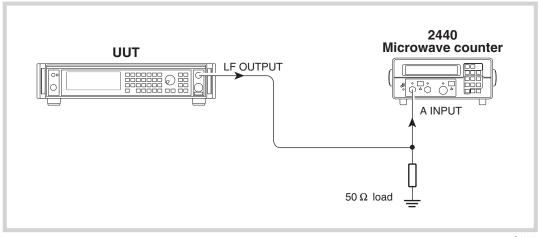
2 V RMS EMF from a 600  $\Omega$  source impedance

# **Test equipment**

Description	Minimum specification	Example
Frequency counter	10 kHz to 2.4 GHz	IFR 2440
$50 \Omega$ load (termination)	1 W, $50\Omega$ nominal impedance, DC to 2.4 GHz	Lucas Weinschel M1404N
Audio analyzer	Capable of measuring THD of 0.01% at 1 kHz	Rohde & Schwarz UPA3

# **Modulation oscillator frequencies**

# **Test procedure**



C4718

Fig. 7-14 Modulation oscillator frequency test set-up

- (1) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-14.
- (2) On the UUT set:

[SOURCE ON/OFF] (to enable modulation source) [MOD ON/OFF] (to enable modulation)

[MOD SOURCE] 10 Hz

(3) Record the frequency measured by the counter against each of the modulation oscillator frequencies shown in Table 7-39.

ACCEPTANCE TESTING

# Modulation oscillator distortion and LF output flatness **Test procedure**

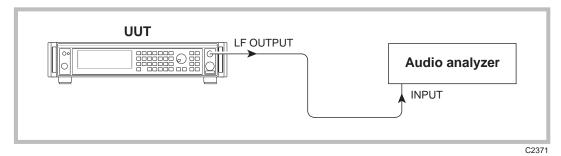


Fig. 7-15 Modulation oscillator distortion test set-up

- (1) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-15.
- On the UUT set: (2)

[SOURCE ON/OFF] (to enable modulation source) [MOD ON/OFF] (to enable modulation) [MOD SOURCE] 1 kHz

- (3) Measure the distortion on the audio analyzer, checking that the result is within the specification shown in Table 7-40.
- Measure the absolute level on the audio analyzer (in dBm) and record this level as a reference.
- (5) Set the UUT mod source to each of the frequencies shown in Table 7-40. Subtract the level measured on the audio analyzer at each frequency from that recorded in (4), checking that the results are within specification.

# **External frequency standard input**

# **Specification**

Input levels: Requires an input of 220 mV RMS to 1.8 V RMS into 1  $k\Omega$ 

Input frequencies: 1 MHz or 10 MHz

# **Test equipment**

Description	Minimum specification	Example
Signal generator	220 mV to 1.8 V RMS, 1 MHz to 10 MHz	IFR 2041 or 2030

# **Test procedure**

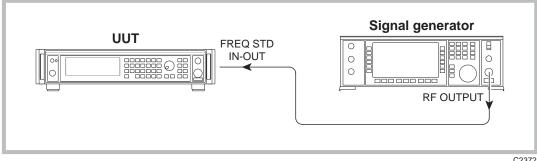


Fig. 7-16 External standard test set-up.

7-28 46882-225U

C2372

- (1) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-16.
- (2) On the UUT set:

[MENU]

Select Frequency/Sweep

Using the [NEXT] key, select Frequency Standard

Select 2 (to select Ext 1 MHz indirect)

- (3) Set the signal generator to RF level 220 mV EMF, carrier frequency 1 MHz.
- (4) Using Table 7-41, check that no external standard error messages are displayed on the UUT.
- (5) Set the signal generator to 1.8 V EMF and repeat (4).
- (6) On the UUT select 3 (to select Ext 10 MHz indirect).
- (7) Set the signal generator to carrier frequency 10 MHz and repeat (4).
- (8) Set the signal generator to 220 mV and repeat (4).

# TEST PROCEDURES FOR INSTRUMENTS FITTED WITH OPTION 3

# **RF** output

# **Specification**

Level range: -137 dBm to +25 dBm (RF power above +19 dBm is uncalibrated for

carrier frequencies >1.2 GHz)

Accuracy: For output levels above -127 dBm and over a temperature range of

17°C to 27°C:

 $\pm 1$  dBm to 1.2 GHz  $\pm 2$  dBm to 2.4 GHz (2024)

Temperature coefficient <= 0.02 dB/°C to 1.2 GHz , <= 0.04 dB/°C to 2.4 GHz

# **Test equipment**

Description	Minimum specification	Example
Power meter	±0.1 dB from 10 kHz to 2.4 GHz	IFR 6960B and 6932
Measuring receiver	0 dBm to -127 dBm; 2.5 MHz to 2.4 GHz	HP 8902A with 11722A sensor and 11793A down converter
Signal generator	+8 dBm from 32.5 MHz to 2.43 GHz	IFR 2041

# RF level frequency response

# **Test procedure**

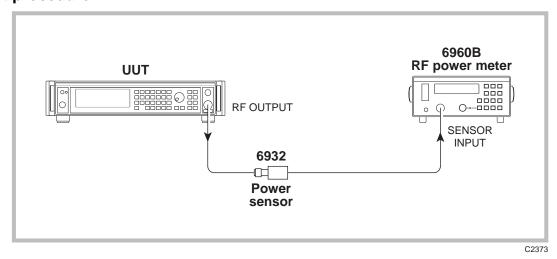


Fig. 7-17 RF output test set-up

- (1) Perform AUTO ZERO and AUTO CAL on the power meter.
- (2) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-17.
- (3) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] [RF LEVEL] 30 [kHz] 0 [dB]

7-30 46882-225U

ACCEPTANCE TESTING

- (4) Record the output level measured by the power meter against each of the carrier frequencies shown in Table 7-42, checking that the results are within specification.
- (5) Set the UUT RF level to +7 dBm and repeat (4) using Table 7-43.
- (6) Set the UUT RF level to +13 dBm and repeat (4) using Table 7-44.
- (7) Set the UUT RF level to +25 dBm and repeat (4) using Table 7-45, decreasing the RF level to +19 dBm when testing at carrier frequencies above 1.2 GHz.

# **ALC linearity**

### **Test procedure**

- (1) Perform AUTO ZERO and AUTO CAL on the power meter.
- (2) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-17.
- (3) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 2.5 [MHz] [RF LEVEL] -4 [dB]

- (4) Record the output level measured by the power meter against each of the steps shown in Table 7-46, checking that the results are within specification.
- (5) Set the UUT carrier frequency to 500 MHz and repeat (4) using Table 7-47.
- (6) Set the UUT carrier frequency to 2400 MHz and repeat (4) using Table 7-48.

# **Attenuator accuracy**

The following test will confirm that the attenuator performs to the published performance specification. In the event of the receiver/down-converter not being available, an alternative method to functionally test the individual pads is also suggested. (See 'Alternative attenuator functional test' under 'ALC linearity' at the start of this Chapter).

#### **Test procedure**

- (1) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-2.
- (2) On the UUT set:

- (3) Tune the receiver to 2.6 MHz and record the output level measured in Table 7-49, checking that the result is within specification.
- (4) Set the UUT RF level to -4.1 dBm. Measure the received level and record the result in Table 7-49, checking that the result is within specification.
- (5) Decrement the UUT, using the [×10 ♣] key, in 11 dB steps down to an RF level of -103.1 dBm, measuring the received level at each step shown in Table 7-49, checking that the results are within specification.
- (6) Set the UUT to carrier frequency 540 MHz and repeat (2) to (5) using Table 7-50.
- (7) Set the UUT to carrier frequency 1140 MHz and repeat (2) to (5) using Table 7-51.

The following test frequencies are for 2024 only. The down converter will automatically be enabled when testing frequencies above 1300 MHz.

(8) Set the local oscillator to +8 dBm at a carrier frequency of 62 MHz less than the test frequency (i.e. 1678 MHz).

- (9) On the receiver, enter the local oscillator frequency followed by the test frequency.
- (10) Set the UUT to carrier frequency 1740 MHz and repeat (2) to (5) using Table 7-52.
- (11) Set the UUT to carrier frequency 2400 MHz and repeat (2) to (5) using Table 7-53.

# **Carrier harmonics**

# **Specification**

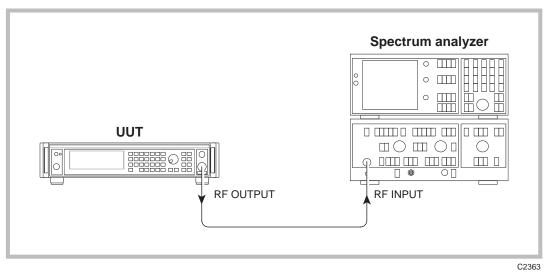
**Harmonics:** Better than -25 dBc for RF levels up to 6 dB below the maximum

specified output

# **Test equipment**

Description	Minimum specification	Example
Spectrum analyzer	DC to 7.2 GHz frequency coverage	IFR 2386

# **Test procedure**



O

Fig. 7-18 Carrier harmonics test set-up

- (1) Press CAL on the spectrum analyzer.
- (2) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. 7-18.
- (3) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 10 [kHz] [RF LEVEL] +19 [dB]

(4) Measure the level of the second and third harmonics on the spectrum analyzer at each of the carrier frequencies shown in Table 7-54, decreasing the RF output to +13 dBm for carrier frequencies above 1.2 GHz, checking that the results are within specification.

7-32 46882-225U

# **ACCEPTANCE TEST RESULTS TABLES**

For 2023 2024	<ul><li>[ ] signal generator, serial number//</li><li>[ ]</li></ul>
Option 1	[ ] no attenuator
Option 2	DC operation
Option 3	[ ] high power
Option 4	[ ] high stability frequency standard
Option 7	[ ] fast pulse modulation
Option 10	[ ] 1 V peak mod input

Table 7-1 RF output at 0 dBm (not option 3)

Table 1 1 th Suspending (not opinens)			
Carrier frequency (MHz)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
0.03	-0.8		+0.8
0.33	-0.8		+0.8
60	-0.8		+0.8
180	-0.8		+0.8
300	-0.8		+0.8
420	-0.8		+0.8
540	-0.8		+0.8
660	-0.8		+0.8
780	-0.8		+0.8
900	-0.8		+0.8
1020	-0.8		+0.8
1140	-0.8		+0.8
1200	-0.8		+0.8
	2024	ONLY	
1201	-1.6		+1.6
1260	-1.6		+1.6
1380	-1.6		+1.6
1500	-1.6		+1.6
1620	-1.6		+1.6
1740	-1.6		+1.6
1860	-1.6		+1.6
1980	-1.6		+1.6
2220	-1.6		+1.6
2340	-1.6		+1.6
2400	-1.6		+1.6

Table 7-2 RF output at +7 dBm (not option 3)

Carrier frequency (MHz)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
0.03	+6.2		+7.8
0.33	+6.2		+7.8
60	+6.2		+7.8
180	+6.2		+7.8
300	+6.2		+7.8
420	+6.2		+7.8
540	+6.2		+7.8
660	+6.2		+7.8
780	+6.2		+7.8
900	+6.2		+7.8
1020	+6.2		+7.8
1140	+6.2		+7.8
1200	+6.2		+7.8
	2024	ONLY	
1201	+5.4		+8.6
1260	+5.4		+8.6
1380	+5.4		+8.6
1500	+5.4		+8.6
1620	+5.4		+8.6
1740	+5.4		+8.6
1860	+5.4		+8.6
1980	+5.4		+8.6
2220	+5.4		+8.6
2340	+5.4		+8.6
2400	+5.4		+8.6

7-34 46882-225U

CCEPTANCE

Table 7-3 RF output at +13 dBm (not option 3)

Carrier frequency (MHz)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
0.03	+12.2		+13.8
0.33	+12.2		+13.8
60	+12.2		+13.8
180	+12.2		+13.8
300	+12.2		+13.8
420	+12.2		+13.8
540	+12.2		+13.8
660	+12.2		+13.8
780	+12.2		+13.8
900	+12.2		+13.8
1020	+12.2		+13.8
1140	+12.2		+13.8
1200	+12.2		+13.8
	2024	ONLY	
1201	+11.4		+14.6
1260	+11.4		+14.6
1380	+11.4		+14.6
1500	+11.4		+14.6
1620	+11.4		+14.6
1740	+11.4		+14.6
1860	+11.4		+14.6
1980	+11.4		+14.6
2220	+11.4		+14.6
2340	+11.4		+14.6
2400	+11.4		+14.6

Table 7-4 ALC linearity at 2.5 MHz (not option 3)

RF level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
-4	-4.8		-3.2
-3	-3.8		-2.2
-2	-2.8		-1.2
-1	-1.8		-0.2
0	-0.8		+0.8
1	+0.2		+1.8
2	+1.2		+2.8
3	+2.2		+3.8
4	+3.2		+4.8
5	+4.2		+5.8
6	+5.2		+6.8
7	+6.2		+7.8
8	+7.2		+8.8
9	+8.2		+9.8
10	+9.2		+10.8
11	+10.2		+11.8
12	+11.2		+12.8
12.1	+11.3		+12.9
12.2	+11.4		+13
12.3	+11.5		+13.1
12.4	+11.6		+13.2
12.5	+11.7		+13.3
12.6	+11.8		+13.4
12.7	+11.9		+13.5
12.8	+12		+13.6
12.9	+12.1		+13.7
13	+12.2		+13.8

7-36 46882-225U

CCEPTANCE

Table 7-5 ALC linearity at 500 MHz (not option 3)

RF level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
-4	-4.8		-3.2
-3	-3.8		-2.2
-2	-2.8		-1.2
-1	-1.8		-0.2
0	-0.8		+0.8
1	+0.2		+1.8
2	+1.2		+2.8
3	+2.2		+3.8
4	+3.2		+4.8
5	+4.2		+5.8
6	+5.2		+6.8
7	+6.2		+7.8
8	+7.2		+8.8
9	+8.2		+9.8
10	+9.2		+10.8
11	+10.2		+11.8
12	+11.2		+12.8
12.1	+11.3		+12.9
12.2	+11.4		+13
12.3	+11.5		+13.1
12.4	+11.6		+13.2
12.5	+11.7		+13.3
12.6	+11.8		+13.4
12.7	+11.9		+13.5
12.8	+12		+13.6
12.9	+12.1		+13.7
13	+12.2		+13.8

Table 7-6 ALC linearity at 2400 MHz (not option 3)

RF level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
-4	-5.6		-2.4
-3	-4.6		-1.4
-2	-3.6		-0.4
-1	-2.6		+0.6
0	-1.6		+1.6
1	-0.6		+2.6
2	+0.4		+3.6
3	+1.4		+4.6
4	+2.4		+5.6
5	+3.4		+6.6
6	+4.4		+7.6
7	+5.4		+8.6
8	+6.4		+9.6
9	+7.4		+10.6
10	+8.4		+11.6
11	+9.4		+12.6
12	+10.4		+13.6
12.1	+10.5		+13.7
12.2	+10.6		+13.8
12.3	+10.7		+13.9
12.4	+10.8		+14
12.5	+10.9		+14.1
12.6	+11		+14.2
12.7	+11.1		+14.3
12.8	+11.2		+14.4
12.9	+11.3		+14.5
13	+11.4		+14.6

7-38 46882-225U

ACCEPTANCE TESTING

Table 7-7 Attenuator test at 2.6 MHz (not option 3)

RF Level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
0	-0.8		+0.8
-4.1	-4.9		-3.3
-15.1	-15.9		-14.3
-26.1	-26.9		-25.3
-37.1	-37.9		-36.3
-48.1	-48.9		-47.3
-59.1	-59.9		-58.3
-70.1	-70.9		-69.3
-81.1	-81.9		-80.3
-92.1	-92.9		-91.3
-103.1	-103.9		-102.3

Table 7-8 Attenuator test at 540 MHz (not option 3)

RF Level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
0	-0.8		+0.8
-4.1	-4.9		-3.3
-15.1	-15.9		-14.3
-26.1	-26.9		-25.3
-37.1	-37.9		-36.3
-48.1	-48.9		-47.3
-59.1	-59.9		-58.3
-70.1	-70.9		-69.3
-81.1	-81.9		-80.3
-92.1	-92.9		-91.3
-103.1	-103.9		-102.3

Table 7-9 Attenuator test at 1140 MHz (not option 3)

RF Level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
0	-0.8		+0.8
-4.1	-4.9		-3.3
-15.1	-15.9		-14.3
-26.1	-26.9		-25.3
-37.1	-37.9		-36.3
-48.1	-48.9		-47.3
-59.1	-59.9		-58.3
-70.1	-70.9		-69.3
-81.1	-81.9		-80.3
-92.1	-92.9		-91.3
-103.1	-103.9		-102.3

Table 7-10 Attenuator test at 1740 MHz (2024 only, not option 3)

RF level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
0	-1.6		+1.6
-4.1	-5.7		-2.5
-15.1	-16.7		-13.5
-26.1	-27.7		-24.5
-37.1	-38.7		-35.5
-48.1	-49.7		-46.5
-59.1	-60.7		-57.5
-70.1	-71.7		-68.5
-81.1	-82.7		-79.5
-92.1	-93.7		-90.5
-103.1	-104.7		-101.5

7-40 46882-225U

CCEPTANCE

Table 7-11 Attenuator test at 2400 MHz (2024 only, not option 3)

RF level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
0	-1.6		+1.6
-4.1	-5.7		-2.5
-15.1	-16.7		-13.5
-26.1	-27.7		-24.5
-37.1	-38.7		-35.5
-48.1	-49.7		-46.5
-59.1	-60.7		-57.5
-70.1	-71.7		-68.5
-81.1	-82.7		-79.5
-92.1	-93.7		-90.5
-103.1	-104.7		-101.5

Table 7-12 Alternative attenuator functional test at 10 MHz

Attenuator pad	Measured value (dB)
33 dB	
22 dB	
33 dB	
11 dB	
33 dB	

Table 7-13 Carrier frequency tests

Frequency (MHz)	Frequency min. (MHz)	Result (MHz)	Frequency max. (MHz)
0.009	-		-
1	-		-
9.999999	-	<del></del>	-
18.75	-	<del></del>	-
37.5	-	<del></del>	-
75	-		-
150	-		-
300	-		-
600	-	<del></del>	-
1200	1199.99988		1200.00012
Instrument fitted with option 4			
1200	1199.999988		1200.000012
	202	4 ONLY	
1200.000001	-		-
1230	-		-
1250	-		-
1260	-		-
1320	-		-
1350	-		-
1500	-		-
1599.999999	-		-
2400	-		-

7-42 46882-225U

CCEPTANCE

Table 7-14 Carrier harmonic tests at -4 dBm (not option 3)

		I		
Carrier frequency (MHz)	2nd harmonic max. level (dBc)	Result (dBc)	3rd harmonic max. level (dBc)	Result (dBc)
0.01	-30		-30	<del></del>
0.1	-30		-30	
1	-30		-30	
9.9	-30		-30	
10	-30		-30	
18.7	-30		-30	
18.8	-30		-30	<del></del>
37.4	-30		-30	<del></del>
37.6	-30		-30	<del></del>
74.9	-30		-30	
75.1	-30		-30	
150	-30		-30	
151	-30		-30	
300	-30		-30	
301	-30		-30	
600	-30		-30	
601	-30		-30	
750	-30		-30	
950	-30		-30	
1200	-30		-30	
		2024 ONLY		
1201	-30		-30	
1500	-30		-30	
1900	-30		-30	
2400	-30		-30	

Table 7-15 Carrier harmonic tests at 0 dBm (not option 3)

0.01	-30			1
			-30	
0.01	-30	<del></del>	-30	<del></del>
1	-30 -30		-30 -30	
9.9				
	-30		-30	
10	-30		-30	
18.7	-30		-30	
18.8	-30		-30	
37.4	-30		-30	
37.6	-30		-30	
74.9	-30		-30	
75.1	-30		-30	
150	-30		-30	
151	-30		-30	
300	-30		-30	
301	-30		-30	
600	-30		-30	
601	-30		-30	
750	-30		-30	
950	-30		-30	
1200	-30		-30	
		2024 ONLY		
1201	-30		-30	
1500	-30		-30	
1900	-30		-30	
2400	-30		-30	

7-44 46882-225U

CCEPTANCE

Table 7-16 Carrier harmonic tests at +7 dBm (not option 3)

Carrier frequency (MHz)	2nd harmonic max. level (dBc)	Result (dBc)	3rd harmonic max. level (dBc)	Result (dBc)	
0.01 0.1 1 9.9 10 18.7	-30 -30 -30 -30 -30 -30		-30 -30 -30 -30 -30 -30		
18.7 18.8 37.4 37.6 74.9 75.1 150 151 300 301 600 601 750 950 1200	-30 -30 -30 -30 -30 -30 -30 -30 -30 -30		-30 -30 -30 -30 -30 -30 -30 -30 -30 -30		
2024 ONLY					
1201 1500 1900 2400	-30 -30 -30 -30		-30 -30 -30 -30		

**Table 7-17 Carrier non-harmonic tests** 

	Sub-harmonic output		Sul	b-harmonic outp	out	
Carrier frequency (MHz)	Non-harmonic frequency (MHz)	Non-harmonic level (dBc)	Result (dBc)	Non-harmonic frequency (MHz)	Non-harmonic level (dBc)	Result (dBc)
1201	800.6667	-64		1601.3333	-64	
1201	400.3333	-64		2001.6667	-64	
1599	1066	-64		2132	-64	
1599	533	-64		2665	-64	
1601	1200.75	-64		2001.25	-64	
1601	800.5	-64		2401.5	-64	
1999	1499.25	-64		2498.75	-64	
1999	999.5	-64		2998.5	-64	
2001	1600.8	-60		2401.2	-60	
2001	1200.6	-60		2801.4	-60	
2400	1920	-60		2880	-60	
2400	1440	-60		3360	-60	
9.9	100.000032	-70		109.900036	-70	

## Table 7-18 Residual FM test

Carrier frequency	Residual FM	Measured value (Hz RMS)
1 GHz	<4.5 Hz RMS	

## Table 7-19 SSB phase noise test

Carrier frequency	SSB phase noise at 20 kHz offset	Measured value (dBc Hz)
470 MHz	<-124 dBc/Hz	

7-46 46882-225U

ACCEPTANCE TESTING

Table 7-20 RF leakage test

Carrier frequency (MHz)	RF leakage	Measured value (dBm)
469	<0.5 μV	
929	<0.5 μV	
1349	<0.5 μV	
2399	<0.5 μV	

Table 7-21 Internal FM deviation and distortion tests at 100 kHz deviation

		FM deviation	Disto	ortion	
Carrier frequency (MHz)	FM deviation min. (kHz)	Result (kHz)	FM deviation max. (kHz)	Distortion (%)	Result (%)
10	95		105	<3%	
10.144	95		105	<3%	
10.292	95		105	<3%	
10.441	95		105	<3%	
10.592	95		105	<3%	
10.746	95		105	<3%	
10.901	95		105	<3%	
11.059	95		105	<3%	
11.22	95		105	<3%	
11.382	95		105	<3%	
11.547	95		105	<3%	
11.714	95		105	<3%	
11.884	95		105	<3%	
12.056	95		105	<3%	
12.23	95		105	<3%	
12.5	95		105	<3%	
12.587	95		105	<3%	
12.77	95		105	<3%	
12.995	95		105	<3%	
13.143	95		105	<3%	
13.333	95		105	<3%	

Table 7-22 FM scale shape tests at 15 MHz carrier

FM deviation (kHz)	FM deviation min. (kHz)	Result (kHz)	FM deviation max. (kHz)
100	95		105
71	67.45		74.55
56	53.2		58.8
44	41.8		46.2
34	32.3		35.7
27	25.65		28.35
21	19.95		22.05
16	15.2		16.8
13	12.35		13.65
11	10.45		11.55
10	9.5		10.5
1	0.95		1.05
0.1	0.095		0.105

Table 7-23 Carrier error test at 1.2 GHz, FM deviation 100 kHz

Carrier error	Result (kHz)
<1 kHz	

Table 7-24 External FM frequency response (ALC off, DC coupled), 50 kHz deviation

Modulation frequency (kHz)	Response level min. (dB)	Result (dB)	Response level max. (dB)	Distortion (%)	Result (%)
0	-1		+1	-	-
0.03	-1		+1	-	-
0.1	-1		+1	<3	
0.3	-1		+1	-	-
1	-	reference	-	<3	
3	-1		+1	-	-
5	-1		+1	<3	
10	-1		+1	-	-
20	-1		+1	<3	
50	-1		+1	-	-
100	-1		+1	-	-

7-48 46882-225U

CCEPTANCE

Table 7-25 External FM frequency response (ALC on), 10 kHz deviation, 0.75 V input

Modulation frequency (kHz)	Response level min. (dB)	Result (dB)	Response level max. (dB)
0.02	-1		+1
0.1	-1		+1
0.3	-1		+1
1	-	reference	-
3	-1		+1
10	-1		+1
30	-1		+1
100	-1		+1

Table 7-26 External FM frequency response (ALC on), 10 kHz deviation, 1.25 V input

Modulation frequency (kHz)	Response level min. (dB)	Result (dB)	Response level max. (dB)	Distortion (%)	Result (%)
0.02	-1		+1	-	-
0.1	-1		+1	<3	
0.3	-1		+1	-	-
1	-	reference	-	<3	
3	-1		+1	-	-
5	-1		+1	<3	
10	-1		+1	-	-
20	-1		+1	<3	
30	-1		+1	-	-
100	-1		+1	-	-

Table 7-27 Internal  $\Phi M$  and distortion test at 10.5 MHz carrier, 10 rad deviation

	ΦM deviation	Distortion		
ΦM deviation min. (rad)	Result (rad)	ΦM deviation max. (rad)	Distortion (%)	Result (%)
9.5		10.5	<3%	

Table 7-28 Internal ΦM flatness test

Modulation frequency (kHz)	Response level min. (dB)	Result (dB)	Response level max. (dB)
0.4	•		0
0.1	-3		+3
0.3	-3		+3
1	-	reference	-
3	-3		+3
10	-3		+3

Table 7-29 Internal AM depth and distortion tests at -4 dBm

	AM depth 30%		ΑN	/I depth 80	)%	Distortion		
Carrier frequency (MHz)	min. (%)	Result (%)	max. (%)	min. (%)	Result (%)	max. (%)	Result at 30% depth (<1.5%)	Result at 80% depth (<2.5%)
1.5	28.5		31.5	76		84		
5	28.5		31.5	76		84		
9	28.5		31.5	76		84		
11	28.5		31.5	76		84		
20	28.5		31.5	76		84		
50	28.5		31.5	76		84		
100	28.5		31.5	76		84		
200	28.5		31.5	76		84		
500	28.5		31.5	76		84		

7-50 46882-225U

CCEPTANCE

Table 7-30 Internal AM depth and distortion tests at 0 dBm

	AN	l depth 30	%	AM depth 80%		Distortion		
Carrier frequency (MHz)	min. (%)	Result (%)	max. (%)	min (%)	Result (%)	max. (%)	Result at 30% depth (<1.5%)	Result at 80% depth (<2.5%)
1.5	28.5		31.5	76		84	<del></del>	
5	28.5		31.5	76		84		
9	28.5		31.5	76		84		
11	28.5		31.5	76		84		
20	28.5		31.5	76		84		
50	28.5		31.5	76		84		
100	28.5		31.5	76		84		
200	28.5		31.5	76		84		
500	28.5		31.5	76		84		

Table 7-31 Internal AM depth and distortion tests at +7 dBm

	AN	l depth 30	depth 30% AM de		depth 80%		Distortion	
Carrier frequency (MHz)	min. (%)	Result (%)	max. (%)	min. (%)	Result (%)	max. (%)	Result at 30% depth (<1.5%)	Result at 80% depth (<2.5%)
1.5	28.5		31.5	76		84		
5	28.5		31.5	76		84		
9	28.5		31.5	76		84		
11	28.5		31.5	76		84		
20	28.5		31.5	76		84		
50	28.5		31.5	76		84		
100	28.5		31.5	76		84		
200	28.5		31.5	76		84		
500	28.5		31.5	76		84		

7-52 46882-225U

CCEPTANCE

Table 7-32 AM scale shape test

AM depth (%)	AM depth min. (%)	Result (%)	AM depth max. (%)
10	9.5		10.5
20	19		21
30	28.5		31.5
40	38		42
50	47.5		52.5
60	57		63
70	66.5		73.5
80	76		84
85	80.75		89.25

Table 7-33 External AM frequency response (ALC off, DC coupled), RF level -4 dBm

Modulation frequency (kHz)	Response level min. (dB)	Result (dB)	Response level max. (dB)
0	-1		+1
0.1	-1		+1
0.3	-1		+1
1	-	reference	-
10	-1		+1
20	-1		+1
30	-1		+1

Table 7-34 External AM frequency response (ALC off, DC coupled), RF level +7 dBm

Modulation frequency (kHz)	Response level min. (dB)	Result (dB)	Response level max. (dB)
0	-1		+1
0.1	-1		+1
0.3	-1		+1
1	-	reference	-
10	-1		+1
20	-1		+1
30	-1		+1

7-54 46882-225U

CCEPTANCE

Table 7-35 Pulse modulation RF output at -7 dBm (not option 7)

Carrier frequency (MHz)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
30	-8.3		+5.7
60	-8.3		+5.7
180	-8.3		+5.7
300	-8.3		+5.7
420	-8.3		+5.7
540	-8.3		+5.7
660	-8.3		+5.7
780	-8.3		+5.7
900	-8.3		+5.7
1020	-8.3		+5.7
1140	-8.3		+5.7
1200	-8.3		+5.7
	2024	ONLY	
1201	-9.1		+4.9
1260	-9.1		+4.9
1380	-9.1		+4.9
1500	-9.1		+4.9
1620	-9.1		+4.9
1740	-9.1		+4.9
1860	-9.1		+4.9
1980	-9.1		+4.9
2220	-9.1		+4.9
2340	-9.1		+4.9
2400	-9.1		+4.9

Table 7-36 Pulse modulation RF output at +4 dBm (not option 7)

Carrier frequency (MHz)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
30	+2.7		+5.3
60	+2.7		+5.3
180	+2.7		+5.3
300	+2.7		+5.3
420	+2.7		+5.3
540	+2.7		+5.3
660	+2.7		+5.3
780	+2.7		+5.3
900	+2.7		+5.3
1020	+2.7		+5.3
1140	+2.7		+5.3
1200	+2.7		+5.3
	2024	ONLY	
1201	+1.9		+6.1
1260	+1.9		+6.1
1380	+1.9		+6.1
1500	+1.9		+6.1
1620	+1.9		+6.1
1740	+1.9		+6.1
1860	+1.9		+6.1
1980	+1.9		+6.1
2220	+1.9		+6.1
2340	+1.9		+6.1
2400	+1.9		+6.1

7-56 46882-225U

ACCEPTANCE TESTING

Table 7-37 Pulse modulation on/off ratio test (not option 7)

Carrier frequency (MHz)	Pulse mod. on/off ratio (dB)	Measured value (dB)
32	>45	
100	>45	
320	>45	
1000	>45	
1200	>45	
	2024 ONLY	
1500	>40	
1800	>40	
2100	>40	
2400	>40	

Table 7-38 Pulse modulation rise and fall time test (not option 7)

		Result (μs)
Rise time	<10 μs	
Fall time	<10 μs	

Table 7-39 Modulation oscillator frequency tests

Frequency (Hz)	Result (Hz)
10	
100	
1000	
20000	

Table 7-40 Modulation oscillator distortion and LF output tests

Mod. oscillator frequency (Hz)	Response level min. (dB)	Result	Response level max. (dB)	Distortion (%)	Result (%)
10	-1		+1	-	-
20	-1		+1	-	-
50	-1		+1	-	-
100	-1		+1	-	-
200	-1		+1	-	-
500	-1		+1	-	-
1000	-1	reference	-	<0.1%	
2000	-1		+1	-	-
5000	-1		+1	-	-
10000	-1		+1	-	-
20000	-1		+1	-	-

Table 7-41 External frequency standard tests

External signal	Locked [√]
1 MHz, 220 mV	[ ]
1 MHz, 1.8 V	[ ]
10 MHz, 220 mV	[ ]
10 MHz, 1.8 V	[ ]

7-58 46882-225U

# ACCEPTANCE TEST RESULTS TABLES OPTION 3

Table 7-42 RF output at 0 dBm

Carrier frequency (MHz)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
0.03	-1		+1
0.33	-1		+1
60	-1		+1
180	-1		+1
300	-1		+1
420	-1		+1
540	-1		+1
660	-1		+1
780	-1		+1
900	-1		+1
1020	-1		+1
1140	-1		+1
1200	-1		+1
	2024	ONLY	<u> </u>
1201	-2		+2
1260	-2		+2
1380	-2		+2
1500	-2		+2
1620	-2		+2
1740	-2		+2
1860	-2		+2
1980	-2		+2
2220	-2		+2
2340	-2		+2
2400	-2		+2

Table 7-43 RF output at +7 dBm

Carrier frequency (MHz)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)	
0.03	+6		+8	
0.33	+6		+8	
60	+6		+8	
180	+6		+8	
300	+6		+8	
420	+6		+8	
540	+6		+8	
660	+6		+8	
780	+6		+8	
900	+6		+8	
1020	+6		+8	
1140	+6		+8	
1200	+6		+8	
2024 ONLY				
1201	+5		+9	
1260	+5		+9	
1380	+5		+9	
1500	+5		+9	
1620	+5		+9	
1740	+5		+9	
1860	+5		+9	
1980	+5		+9	
2220	+5		+9	
2340	+5		+9	
2400	+5		+9	

7-60 46882-225U

CCEPTANCE

Table 7-44 RF output at +13 dBm

Carrier frequency (MHz)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
0.03	+12		+14
0.33	+12		+14
60	+12		+14
180	+12		+14
300	+12		+14
420	+12		+14
540	+12		+14
660	+12		+14
780	+12		+14
900	+12		+14
1020	+12		+14
1140	+12		+14
1200	+12		+14
	2024	ONLY	<u> </u>
1201	+11		+15
1260	+11		+15
1380	+11		+15
1500	+11		+15
1620	+11		+15
1740	+11		+15
1860	+11		+15
1980	+11		+15
2220	+11		+15
2340	+11		+15
2400	+11		+15

Table 7-45 RF output at +25 dBm

Carrier frequency (MHz)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)	
0.03	+24		+26	
0.33	+24		+26	
60	+24		+26	
180	+24		+26	
300	+24		+26	
420	+24		+26	
540	+24		+26	
660	+24		+26	
780	+24		+26	
900	+24		+26	
1020	+24		+26	
1140	+24		+26	
1200	+24		+26	
	2024 ONL	r, +19 dBm		
1201	+17		+21	
1260	+17		+21	
1380	+17		+21	
1500	+17		+21	
1620	+17		+21	
1740	+17		+21	
1860	+17		+21	
1980	+17		+21	
2220	+17		+21	
2340	+17		+21	
2400	+17		+21	

7-62 46882-225U

Table 7-46 ALC linearity at 2.5 MHz

RF level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
-4	-5		-3
-3	-4		-2
-2	-3	<del></del>	-1
-1	-2		0
0	-1		+1
1	0	<del></del>	+2
2	+1	<del></del>	+3
3	+2		+4
4	+3		+5
5	+4		+6
6	+5		+7
7	+6		+8
8	+7		+9
9	+8		+10
10	+9		+11
11	+10		+12
12	+11		+13
12.1	+11.1		+13.1
12.2	+11.2		+13.2
12.3	+11.3		+13.3
12.4	+11.4		+13.4
12.5	+11.5		+13.5
12.6	+11.6		+13.6
12.7	+11.7		+13.7
12.8	+11.8		+13.8
12.9	+11.9		+13.9
13	+12		+14
14	+13		+15
15	+14		+16
16	+15		+17
17	+16		+18
18	+17		+19
19	+18		+20
20	+19		+21
21	+20		+22
22	+21		+23
23	+22		+24
24	+23		+25
25	+24		+26

Table 7-47 ALC linearity at 500 MHz

RF level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
-4	-5		-3
-3	-4		-2
-2	-3		-1
-1	-2		0
0	-1		+1
1	0		+2
2	+1		+3
3	+2		+4
4	+3		+5
5	+4		+6
6	+5		+7
7	+6		+8
8	+7		+9
9	+8		+10
10	+9		+11
11	+10		+12
12	+11		+13
12.1	+11.1		+13.1
12.2	+11.2		+13.2
12.3	+11.3		+13.3
12.4	+11.4		+13.4
12.5	+11.5	<del></del>	+13.5
12.6	+11.6		+13.6
12.7	+11.7	<del></del>	+13.7
12.8	+11.8	<del></del>	+13.8
12.9	+11.9	<del></del>	+13.9
13	+12		+14
14	+13		+15
15	+14		+16
16	+15		+17
17	+16		+18
18	+17		+19
19	+18		+20
20	+19		+21
21	+20		+22
22	+21		+23
23	+22		+24
24	+23		+25
25	+24		+26

Table 7-48 ALC linearity at 2400 MHz

7-64 46882-225U

RF level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
-4	-6		-2
-3	-5		-1
-2	-4		0
-1	-3		+1
0	-2		+2
1	-1		+3
2	0		+4
3	+1		+5
4	+2		+6
5	+3		+7
6	+4		+8
7	+5		+9
8	+6		+10
9	+7		+11
10	+8		+12
11	+9		+13
12	+10		+14
12.1	+10.1		+14.1
12.2	+10.2		+14.2
12.3	+10.3		+14.3
12.4	+10.4		+14.4
12.5	+10.5		+14.5
12.6	+10.6		+14.6
12.7	+10.7		+14.7
12.8	+10.8		+14.8
12.9	+10.9		+14.9
13	+11		+15
14	+12		+16
15	+13		+17
16	+14		+18
17	+15		+19
18	+16		+20
19	+17		+21

Table 7-49 Attenuator test at 2.6 MHz

RF level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)	
0	-1		+1	
-4.1	-5.1		-3.1	
-15.1	-16.1		-14.1	
-26.1	-27.1		-25.1	
-37.1	-38.1		-36.1	
-48.1	-49.1		-47.1	
-59.1	-60.1		-58.1	
-70.1	-71.1		-69.1	
-81.1	-82.1		-80.1	
-92.1	-93.1		-91.1	
-103.1	-104.1		-102.1	

Table 7-50 Attenuator test at 540 MHz

RF level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)	
0	-1		+1	
-4.1	-5.1		-3.1	
-15.1	-16.1		-14.1	
-26.1	-27.1		-25.1	
-37.1	-38.1		-36.1	
-48.1	-49.1		-47.1	
-59.1	-60.1		-58.1	
-70.1	-71.1		-69.1	
-81.1	-82.1		-80.1	
-92.1	-93.1		-91.1	
-103.1	-104.1		-102.1	

7-66 46882-225U

CCEPTANCE

Table 7-51 Attenuator test at 1140 MHz

RF level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)	
0	-1		+1	
-4.1	-5.1		-3.1	
-15.1	-16.1	<del></del>	-14.1	
-26.1	-27.1	<del></del>	-25.1	
-37.1	-38.1		-36.1	
-48.1	-49.1	<del></del>	-47.1	
-59.1	-60.1		-58.1	
-70.1	-71.1	<del></del>	-69.1	
-81.1	-82.1	<del></del>	-80.1	
-92.1	-93.1		-91.1	
-103.1	-104.1		-102.1	

Table 7-52 Attenuator test at 1740 MHz (2024 only)

RF level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)	
0	-2		+2	
-4.1	-6.1		-2.1	
-15.1	-17.1		-13.1	
-26.1	-28.1		-24.1	
-37.1	-39.1		-35.1	
-48.1	-50.1		-46.1	
-59.1	-61.1		-57.1	
-70.1	-72.1		-68.1	
-81.1	-83.1		-79.1	
-92.1	-94.1		-90.1	
-103.1	-105.1		-101.1	

Table 7-53 Attenuator test at 2400 MHz (2024 only)

RF level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)	
0	-2		+2	
-4.1	-6.1		-2.1	
-15.1	-17.1		-13.1	
-26.1	-28.1		-24.1	
-37.1	-39.1		-35.1	
-48.1	-50.1		-46.1	
-59.1	-61.1		-57.1	
-70.1	-72.1		-68.1	
-81.1	-83.1		-79.1	
-92.1	-94.1		-90.1	
-103.1	-105.1		-101.1	

7-68 46882-225U

CCEPTANCE

Table 7-54 Carrier harmonic tests at +19 dBm

Carrier frequency (MHz)	2nd harmonic max. level (dBc)	Result (MHz)	3rd harmonic max. level (dBc)	Result (MHz)	
0.01	-25		-25		
0.1	-25		-25		
1	-25		-25		
9.9	-25		-25		
10	-25		-25		
18.7	-25		-25		
18.8	-25		-25		
37.4	-25		-25		
37.6	-25		-25		
74.9	-25		-25		
75.1	-25		-25		
150	-25		-25		
151	-25		-25		
300	-25		-25		
301	-25		-25		
600	-25		-25		
601	-25		-25		
750	-25		-25		
950	-25		-25		
1200	-25		-25		
2024 ONLY (+13 dBm)					
1201	-25		-25		
1500	-25		-25		
1900	-25		-25		
2400	-25 -25		-25 -25		
2400	-25		-25		

## Annex A OPTION 100 INTERNAL PULSE GENERATOR

	General description	
	Performance data	A-2
	Operation	A-2
	Pulse modulation selection	A-2
	Remote operation	A-3
	Pulse modulation	A-3
List of	f figures	
	Fig. A. 1. Pulsa modulation many	Λ 2

46882-225U Annex-A-1

## **General description**

Option 100 adds the ability for the instrument to internally generate a pulse waveform with an off duration of 100  $\mu$ s at a selectable PRF between 10 Hz and 1 kHz. This pulse is used to internally pulse modulate the RF carrier. It may be used in conjunction with other forms of modulation to form composite signals. Familiarity with normal operation of the signal generator is assumed.

#### Performance data

The following specification is in addition to that included in the 2023/2024 specification.

Carrier frequency range: 32 MHz to 2.4 GHz.

Pulse

Pulse repetition freq (PRF): 10 Hz to 1 kHz with a minimum resolution of 1 Hz.

PRF <100 Hz with 1 Hz resolution, 1 Hz accuracy.

PRF >100 Hz, available rates are:

 $\frac{10 \text{ kHz}}{N} \text{ (Hz)}$ 

where N = round  $\frac{10 \text{ kHz}}{\text{anded PRF}}$  in the range 100 to 10.

Pulse width:  $100 \mu s$ .

## **Operation**

The following section replaces that with the same title in Chap. 4 in the main section of the manual.

#### Pulse modulation selection

Pulse modulation may be selected in addition to any other normal modulation modes. The source may be generated internally, or externally from the rear panel PULSE INPUT socket. (Note that using this socket for external modulation prevents 4FSK operation). Selection may be made as follows:

(1) Select the *Util 22: Pulse Modulation* menu. This shows the currently selected modulation mode against *Mod Mode*: (see Fig. A-1 below).

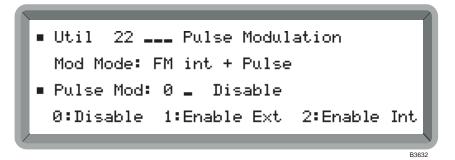


Fig. A-1 Pulse modulation menu

- (2) Enter 1 or 2 on the key pad (no terminator is required) to *Enable* respectively the external or internal modulation. The display changes to show the current modulation plus *Pulse* (e.g. *Mod Mode: AM int + FM ext + Pulse*). Entering 0 will disable the modulation.
- (3) Press [MOD] to return to the main screen. Repeatedly press [MOD] until *Pulse Mod* is displayed together with its *ON* or *OFF* state.

Annex-A-2 46882-225U

- (4) For internal modulation press [MOD SOURCE] to display *ModF* and enter your required PRF in the range 10 Hz to 1 kHz. The closest available PRF will be displayed, to 1 Hz resolution.
- (5) Press [MOD ON/OFF] until *ON* is displayed. To generate the pulse modulation, press [SOURCE ON/OFF] until either *INT ON* or *EXT ON* is displayed.

When *ON* is selected for external pulse modulation the carrier is controlled by the logic level applied to the PULSE INPUT socket. A logical '1' (5 V) allows carrier output, a logical '0' (0 V) suppresses it. Turning pulse mod *OFF* effectively applies a logical '1' allowing carrier output.

**Note** 

When internal pulse is enabled sweep mode is disallowed. Similarly, when sweep mode is enabled internal pulse is disallowed.

## Remote operation

#### **Pulse modulation**

The following section replaces that with the same title in Chap. 5 in the main section of the manual.

PULSE [not used alone]

:ON Turn Pulse modulation ON
 :OFF Turn Pulse modulation OFF
 :INT Select internal pulse modulation
 :EXT Select external pulse modulation

:MODF Set internal pulse modulation frequency (short form)

:VALUE Set internal pulse modulation frequency

Data type: Decimal Numeric Program Data
Allowed suffices: Any one of: GHZ, MHZ, KHZ or HZ

Default suffix: HZ

Examples: PULSE: INT

PULSE: MODF 909 HZ

PULSE? Prepares message containing information on Pulse Modulation setting in the

following format: :PULSE:<status>;<src>

where: <status> is a program mnemonic indicating whether the pulse

modulation is ON or OFF and <src> is a program mnemonic

representing the source of the pulse modulation

Example: PULSE: ON; EXT

**PULSE:MODF?** Pulse modulation frequency setting in the following format:

:PULSE:MODF:VALUE <nr2>

Example: :PULSE:MODF:VALUE 57.0

46882-225U Annex-A-3

## Annex B OPTION 7 FAST PULSE MODULATION

C	$\boldsymbol{\wedge}$	n	+	Δ	n	+	c
u	u		L	ㄷ		ш	

Contonts			
	General description		
	Performance data		
	Controls and connectors		
	Fron	B-2	
	Rear	B-3	
		B-4	
	_	B-4	
	Remote operation		
		B-4	
		B-6	
List of fig	ures		
	Fig. B-1	2024 front panel showing SUPPLY switch and connectors	B-2
	Fig. B-2		
	Fig. B-3	Pulse modulation menu	B-4
	Fig. B-4	Block schematic diagram of instrument fitted with Option 7	B-5
	Fig. B-5	•	
	Fig. B-6	Pulse modulation on/off ratio test set-up	
	-	Pulse modulation rise and fall time test set up	

## **General description**

Option 7 adds the ability for the instrument to internally generate a fast pulse modulated waveform from logic levels applied to the PULSE INPUT socket. The pulse modulator is suitable for generating fast pulses with high isolation for applications in radar and EMI. It may be used in conjunction with other forms of modulation to form composite signals. Familiarity with normal operation of the signal generator is assumed.

The functions of the EXT MOD INPUT and LF OUTPUT sockets for the standard instrument are combined in the MOD I/O socket. And the PULSE INPUT socket replaces the standard rear panel PULSE I/P socket. This relabelling should be taken into consideration throughout the manual, especially in regard to the connections made for Acceptance Testing in Chap. 7.

## Performance data

The following specification supersedes that with the same title in the 2023/2024 specification.

**Pulse modulation** 

Carrier frequency range: 100 kHz to 2.4 GHz, usable to 9 kHz.

RF level range: Maximum guaranteed output is reduced by 3 dBm when pulse

modulation is selected.

RF level accuracy: Additional temperature coefficient <±0.01 dB/°C when pulse

modulation selected.

Input: A logical '1' (5 V) turns the carrier on, a logical '0' (0 V) turns the carrier

off. Connection is via a front panel BNC connector, TTL levels into

50  $\Omega$  input inpedance. Maximum safe input is  $\pm 10$  V.

On/off ratio: >80 dBc below 1.2 GHz.

>70 dBc up to 2.1 GHz (typically >80 dB).

>65 dBc above 2.1 GHz (typically >70 dB at 2.4 GHz).

Maximum repetition frequency: 10 MHz.

Rise and fall time: <20 ns, typically 10 ns.

#### **Controls and connectors**

The following sections replace those with the same titles in Chapter 4 in the main body of the manual.

#### Front panel connectors

The front panel connectors are shown in Fig. B-1 below:

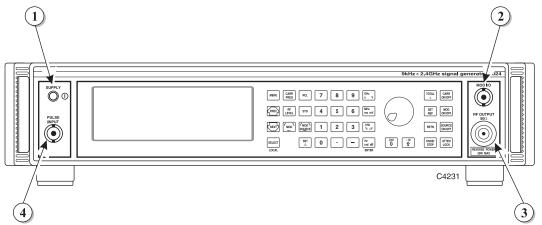


Fig. B-1 2024 front panel showing SUPPLY switch and connectors

(1) SUPPLY switch Switches the supply on and off using a press on, press off

action.

(2) MOD I/O  $100 \text{ k}\Omega$  BNC connector which allows an external modulating

signal to be applied. Also provides a modulation oscillator

output from a 600 k $\Omega$  source impedance.

With Option 5 this connector is fitted on the rear panel.

(3) RF OUTPUT 50  $\Omega$  N-type socket. Protected against the application of

reverse power of up to 50 W.

With Option 5 this socket is fitted on the rear panel.

(4) PULSE INPUT  $50 \Omega$  BNC socket which accepts a pulsed input.

With Option 5 this socket is fitted on the rear panel.

## Rear panel connectors

The rear panel connectors are shown in Fig. B-2 below.

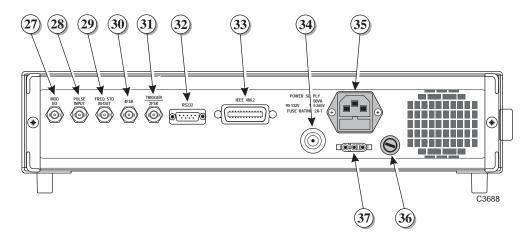


Fig. B-2 Instrument rear panel showing connectors

(27)	MOD I/O (optional)	An Option 5 BNC socket which, when fitted, replaces the front panel MOD I/O socket.
(28)	PULSE INPUT (optional)	An Option 5 BNC socket which, when fitted, replaces the front panel PULSE INPUT socket.
(29)	FREQ STD IN-OUT	BNC socket for the input of external standard frequencies of either 1 MHz or 10 MHz. Can also supply a 10 MHz internal standard output.
(30)	4FSK	BNC socket used as one logic input (the other is the 2FSK input) for 4FSK modulation.
(31)	TRIGGER 2FSK	BNC socket which has three uses; in priority order these are: FSK logic input Memory sequencing Sweep trigger
(32)	RS232	9-way RS-232 connector for remote control of the instrument. For contact allocation see Chap. 2.
(33)	IEEE 488.2	24-pin socket accepts the standard GPIB connector to allow remote control of the instrument. For contact allocation see Chap. 2.
(34)	RF OUTPUT (optional)	An Option 5 50 $\Omega$ N-type socket. When fitted, replaces the front panel RF OUTPUT socket.
(35)	Power supply	3-pin plug integral with fuse holder. Mates with AC supply lead socket.
(36)	DC supply fuse (optional)	When Option 2 fitted, fuses the DC input socket.
(37)	DC input (optional)	When Option 2 fitted, the socket allows operation from an external 11 to 32 V DC source. For contact polarity see Chap. 2.

## **Operation**

The following sections replace those with the same titles in Chapter 4 in the main body of the manual.

#### Pulse modulation selection

Pulse modulation may be selected in addition to any other normal modulation modes. The source is external only from the front panel PULSE INPUT socket. Selection may be made as follows:

(1) Select the *Util 22: Pulse Modulation* menu. This shows the currently selected modulation mode against *Mod Mode:* (see Fig. B-3).

```
    Util 22 ___ Pulse Modulation
    Mod Mode: FM int
    Pulse Mod: 0 _ Disable
    0: Disable 1: Enable Ext
```

Fig. B-3 Pulse modulation menu

- (2) Enter 1 on the key pad (no terminator is required) to *Enable* the external modulation. The display changes to show the current modulation plus *Pulse* (e.g. *Mod Mode: AM int + FM ext + Pulse*). Entering 0 will disable the modulation.
- (3) Press [MOD] to return to the main screen. Repeatedly press [Mod] until Pulse Mod is displayed together with EXT ON. Note that for pulse operation pressing [Source ON/OFF] has no effect on the instrument.

When ON the carrier is controlled by the logic level applied to the PULSE INPUT socket. A logical '1' (a voltage between 3.5 and 5 V) allows carrier output, a logical '0' (a voltage between 0 and 1.0 V) suppresses it. Turning pulse mod OFF effectively applies a logical '1' allowing carrier output.

#### Remote operation

The GPIB commands for pulse modulation PULSE:ON and PULSE:OFF are invalid , and PULSE? will always return PULSE:ON.

# **Brief technical description**

Block diagram Fig. B-4 replaces that given in Chapter 6 in the main body of the manual. This shows that for an instrument fitted with Option 7:

The front panel EXT MOD INPUT socket is replaced by the PULSE INPUT socket.

The front panel former LF OUTPUT socket performs the dual functions of MOD I/O.

The rear panel PULSE I/P socket is replaced by the 4FSK socket.

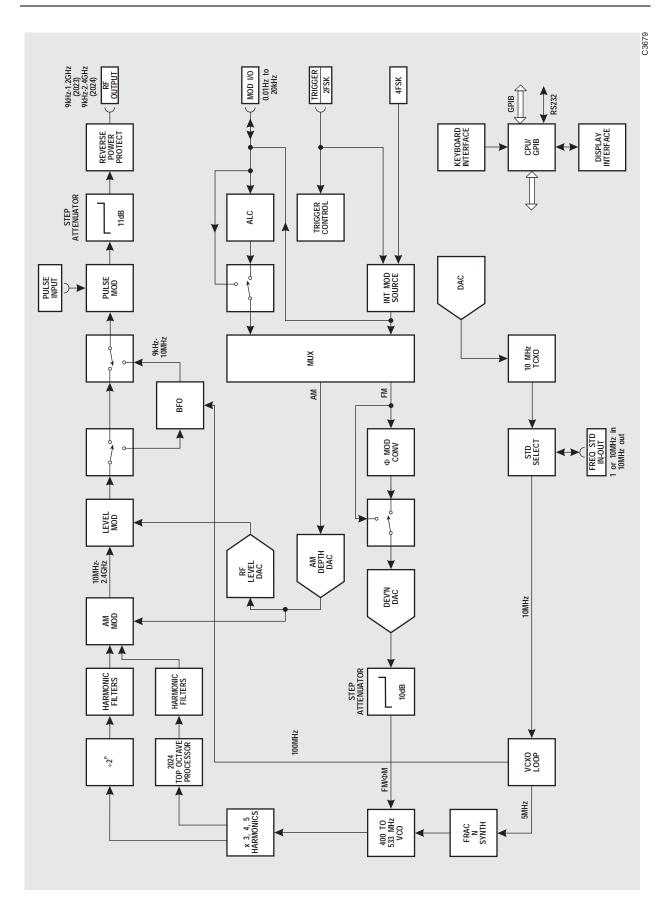


Fig. B-4 Block schematic diagram of instrument fitted with Option 7.

# **Acceptance testing**

The following acceptance tests supersede those given under Pulse modulation in the main body of the manual.

#### **Pulse modulation**

#### **Specification**

Carrier frequency range: 100 kHz to 2.4 GHz.

RF level range: Maximum guaranteed output is reduced to +10 dBm when pulse

modulation is selected.

RF level accuracy: Additional temperature coefficient <±0.01 dB/°C when pulse

modulation selected.

On/off ratio: >80 dB below 1.2 GHz, >70 dB below 2.1 GHz,

>65 dB above 2.1 GHz.

Rise and fall time: Less than 20 ns.

#### **Test equipment**

The test equipment recommended for acceptance testing is shown in Table B-1. Alternative equipment may be used providing it complies with the stated minimum performance.

Table B-1 Recommended test equipment

Description	Minimum specification	Example
Power meter	±0.1 dB from 10 kHz to 2.4 GHz	IFR 6960B and 6912
Spectrum analyser	Frequency coverage 100 kHz to 2.4 GHz	IFR 2392, 2383 or 2386
$50 \Omega$ load (termination)	1 W, 50 $\Omega$ nominal impedance, DC to 2.4 GHz	Lucas Weinschel M1404N
Oscilloscope	100 MHz bandwidth	Tektronix TAS 465
Function generator	DC to 10 kHz square wave	HP 3325B
RF detector	100 kHz to 2 GHz	HP 8471D

## Pulse modulation RF level frequency response

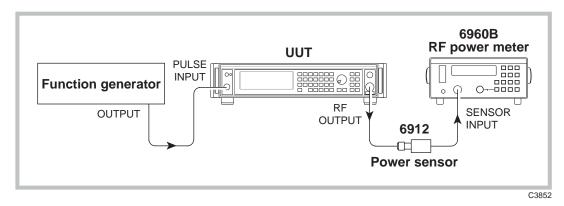


Fig. B-5 Pulse modulation test set-up

#### **Test procedure**

- (1) Perform AUTO ZERO and AUTO CAL on the power meter.
- (2) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. B-5.
- (3) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 100 [kHz] [RF LEVEL] -4 [dB] [MENU] 22 ENTER

The UUT will enter the 'Pulse Modulation' menu

Select '1' (To enable Pulse Mod.)
[MOD] then [MOD] then [MOD] again (To select Pulse Mod)
[SOURCE ON/OFF] (To enable modulation source)
[MOD ON/OFF] (To enable modulation)

- (4) Set the function generator to provide +5 V DC. The RF output will now be enabled.
- (5) Record the output level measured by the power meter against each of the carrier frequencies shown in Table B-2 checking that the results are within specification.
- (6) Set the UUT RF level to +7 dBm and repeat (5) using Table B-3.

#### Pulse modulation on/off ratio

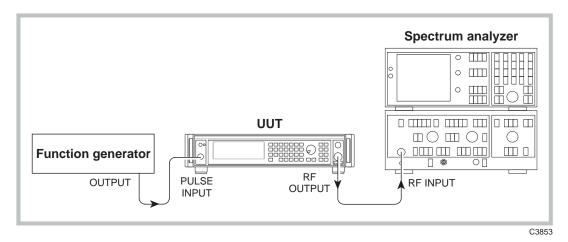


Fig. B-6 Pulse modulation on/off ratio test set-up

#### **Test procedure**

- (1) Press CAL on the spectrum analyser.
- (2) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. B-6.
- (3) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 100 [kHz] [RF LEVEL] 0 [dB] [MENU] 22 ENTER

The UUT will enter the 'Pulse Modulation' menu

Select '1' (To enable Pulse Mod.)
[MOD] then [MOD] then [MOD] again (To select Pulse Mod)
[SOURCE ON/OFF] (To enable modulation source)
[MOD ON/OFF] (To enable modulation)

- (4) Set the function generator to provide +5 V DC. The RF output will now be enabled.
- (5) Tune the spectrum analyser to the same frequency as the signal generator.
- (6) Press PEAK FIND on the spectrum analyser and note the output level.

- (7) Apply a short circuit to the PULSE INPUT socket.
- (8) Again note the output level measured by the spectrum analyser.
- (9) The difference between the levels recorded in (6) and (8) is the pulse mod on/off ratio. Check that the ratio is within specification using Table B-4.
- (10) Repeat (5) to (9) for each of the frequencies shown in Table B-4.

#### Pulse modulation rise and fall time

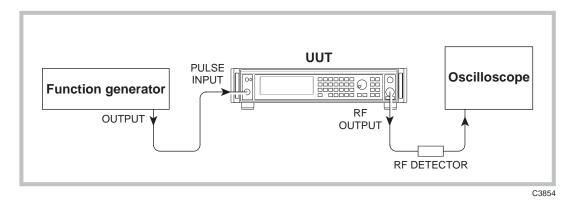


Fig. B-7 Pulse modulation rise and fall time test set-up

**Test procedure** 

(1) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. B-7.

(2) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 1 [GHz] [RF LEVEL] +7 [dB] [MENU] 22 ENTER

The UUT will enter the 'Pulse Modulation' menu

Select '1' (To enable Pulse Mod.)

[MOD] then [MOD] then [MOD] again (To select Pulse Mod)

[SOURCE ON/OFF] (To enable modulation source)

[MOD ON/OFF] (To enable modulation)

- (3) Set the function generator to produce 100 kHz, 0 V to +5 V square wave.
- (4) Adjust the oscilloscope controls such that the rise time of the envelope can be measured.
- (5) Measure the rise time between the 10% to 90% points checking that it is within the specification shown in Table B-5.
- (6) Repeat (4) to (5) for the fall time of the envelope.

# **ACCEPTANCE TEST RESULTS TABLES** for Option 7 (fast pulse modulator)

Table B-2 Pulse mod. RF output at -4 dBm

Carrier Frequency (MHz)	RF level m in. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
0.1	-5.3		-2.7
30	-5.3		-2.7
60	-5.3		-2.7
180	-5.3		-2.7
300	-5.3		-2.7
420	-5.3		-2.7
540	-5.3		-2.7
660	-5.3		-2.7
780	-5.3		-2.7
900	-5.3	<del></del>	-2.7
1020	-5.3		-2.7
1140	-5.3		-2.7
1200	-5.3		-2.7
2024 ONLY			
1201	-6.1		-1.9
1260	-6.1		-1.9
1380	-6.1		-1.9
1500	-6.1		-1.9
1620	-6.1		-1.9
1740	-6.1		-1.9
1860	-6.1		-1.9
1980	-6.1		-1.9
2220	-6.1		-1.9
2340	-6.1		-1.9
2400	-6.1		-1.9

Table B-3 Pulse mod. RF output at +7 dBm

Carrier frequency (MHz)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
0.1	+5.7		+8.3
30	+5.7		+8.3
60	+5.7		+8.3
180	+5.7		+8.3
300	+5.7		+8.3
420	+5.7		+8.3
540	+5.7		+8.3
660	+5.7		+8.3
780	+5.7		+8.3
900	+5.7		+8.3
1020	+5.7		+8.3
1140	+5.7		+8.3
1200	+5.7		+8.3
2024 ONLY			
1201	+4.9		+9.1
1260	+4.9		+9.1
1380	+4.9		+9.1
1500	+4.9		+9.1
1620	+4.9		+9.1
1740	+4.9		+9.1
1860	+4.9		+9.1
1980	+4.9		+9.1
2220	+4.9		+9.1
2340	+4.9		+9.1
2400	+4.9		+9.1

Table B-4 Pulse modulation on/off ratio test

Carrier frequency (MHz)	Pulse mod. on/off ratio (dB)	Measured value (dB)
0.1	>80	
32	>80	
100	>80	
320	>80	
1000	>80	
1200	>80	
	2024 ONLY	
1500	>70	
1800	>70	
2100	>70	
2400	>65	

Table B-5 Pulse modulation rise and fall time test

		Result (ns)
Rise time	<20 ns	
Fall time	<20 ns	

# Annex C

# **OPTION 11 FAST PULSE AND HIGH POWER**

Co	nte	nts
----	-----	-----

Contents			
	General des	scription	C-2
		re data	
	Controls an	nd connectors	C-3
	Front p	panel connectors	C-3
		anel connectors	
		nodulation selection	
	Remote	e operation	C-5
	Brief techni	ical description	
	Acceptance	e testing	
	RF output.	-	
	RF lev	el frequency response	
	ALC li	nearity	
	Attenu	ator accuracy	
	Carrier har	monics	C-9
	Pulse r	nodulation	C-10
List of tal	oles		
	Table C-1	RF output at 0 dBm	
	Table C-2	RF output at +7 dBm	
	Table C-3	RF output at +13 dBm	
	Table C-4	RF output at +25 dBm	
	Table C-5	ALC linearity at 2.5 MHz	
	Table C-6	ALC linearity at 500 MHz	
	Table C-7	ALC linearity at 2400 MHz	
	Table C-8	Attenuator test at 2.6 MHz.	
	Table C-9	Attenuator test at 540 MHz	
	Table C-10	Attenuator test at 1140 MHz	C-22
	Table C-11	Attenuator test at 1740 MHz (2024 only)	
	Table C-12	Attenuator test at 2400 MHz (2024 only)	
	Table C-13	Carrier harmonic tests at +19 dBm	
	Table C-14	Pulse mod. RF output at -4 dBm	C-25
	Table C-15	Pulse mod. RF output at +7 dBm	
	Table C-16	Pulse modulation on/off ratio test	
	Table C-17	Pulse modulation rise and fall time test	C-27
List of fig	ures		
	Fig. C-1	2024 front panel showing SUPPLY switch and connectors	
	Fig. C-2	Instrument rear panel showing connectors	
	Fig. C-3	Pulse modulation menu	
	Fig. C-4	Block schematic diagram of instrument fitted with Option 11	
	Fig. C-5	RF output test set-up	
	Fig. C-6	RF output test set-up	
	Fig. C-7	Carrier harmonics test set-up	
	Fig. C-8	Pulse modulation test set-up	
	Fig. C-9	Pulse modulation on/off ratio test set-up	
	Fig. C-10	Pulse modulation rise and fall time test set-up	

## **General description**

Option 11 increases the maximum output from the normal +13 dBm and adds the ability for the instrument to internally generate a fast pulse modulated waveform at a high power level from logic levels applied to the PULSE INPUT socket. The pulse modulator is suitable for generating fast pulses with high isolation for applications in radar and EMI. It may be used in conjunction with other forms of modulation to form composite signals. Familiarity with normal operation of the signal generator is assumed.

The functions of the EXT MOD INPUT and LF OUTPUT sockets for the standard instrument are combined in the MOD I/O socket. And the PULSE INPUT socket replaces the standard rear panel PULSE I/P socket. This relabelling should be taken into consideration throughout the manual, especially in regard to the connections made for Acceptance Testing in Chap. 7.

#### Performance data

The specification is the same as for the standard instrument with the following exceptions:

RF output

RF output range: -140 dBm to +25 dBm (output power above +19 dBm is uncalibrated for carrier

frequencies above 1.2 GHz).

Maximum output is reduced by 3 dB when pulse modulation is selected and/or by up to

6 dB dependant upon set AM depth.

RF level accuracy: Over a temperature range 17°C to 27°C:

±1 dB up to 1.2 GHz, and ±2 dB up to 2.4 GHz.

Temperature coefficient < $\pm 0.02$  dB/°C to 1.2 GHz, and < $\pm 0.04$  dB/°C to 2.4 GHz.

Harmonics: Typically better than -25 dBc for levels 6 dB below the maximum specified output.

**Pulse modulation** 

Carrier frequency range: 100 kHz to 2.4 GHz usable to 9 kHz.

RF level range: Maximum guaranteed output is reduced by 3 dBm when pulse modulation is selected.

RF level accuracy: Additional temperature coefficient <±0.01 dB/°C when pulse modulation selected.

Input: A logical '1' (5 V) turns the carrier on, a logical '0' (0 V) turns the carrier off. Connection is via a

front panel BNC connector, TTL levels into 50  $\Omega$  input impedance. Maximum safe input is

±10 V.

On-off ratio: >80 dBc below 1.2 GHz.

>70 dBc up to 2.1 GHz (typically >80 dBc).

>65 dBc above 2.1 GHz (typically >70 dBc at 2.4 GHz).

Maximum repetition frequency 10 MHz.

Rise and fall time: Less than 20 ns, typically 10 ns.

Annex-C-2 46882-225U

## **Controls and connectors**

The following sections replace those with the same titles in Chapter 4 in the main body of the manual.

## Front panel connectors

The front panel connectors are shown in Fig. C-1 below:

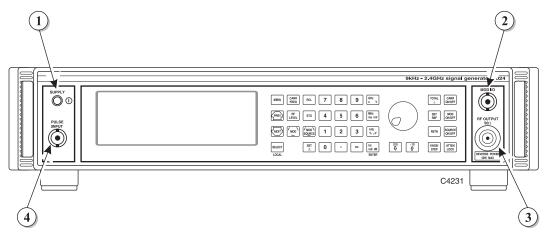


Fig. C-1 2024 front panel showing SUPPLY switch and connectors

(1)	SUPPLY switch	Switches the supply on and off using a press on, press off action.
(2)	MOD I/O	$100~k\Omega$ BNC connector which allows an external modulating signal to be applied. Also provides a modulation oscillator output from a $600~k\Omega$ source impedance.
		With Option 5 this connector is fitted on the rear panel.
(3)	RF OUTPUT	$50\Omega$ N-type socket. Protected against the application of reverse power of up to $50$ W.
		With Option 5 this socket is fitted on the rear panel.
(4)	PULSE INPUT	$50~\Omega$ BNC socket which accepts a pulsed input.
		With Option 5 this socket is fitted on the rear panel.

# **Rear panel connectors**

The rear panel connectors are shown in Fig. C-2 below.

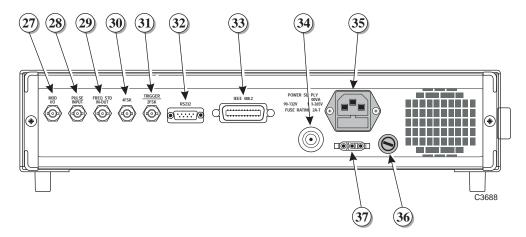


Fig. C-2 Instrument rear panel showing connectors

(27)	MOD I/O (optional)	An Option 5 BNC socket which, when fitted, replaces the front panel MOD I/O socket.
(28)	PULSE INPUT (optional)	An Option 5 BNC socket which, when fitted, replaces the front panel PULSE INPUT socket.
(29)	FREQ STD IN-OUT	BNC socket for the input of external standard frequencies of either 1 MHz or 10 MHz. Can also supply a 10 MHz internal standard output.
(30)	4FSK	BNC socket used as one logic input (the other is the 2FSK input) for 4FSK modulation.
(31)	TRIGGER 2FSK	BNC socket which has three uses; in priority order these are: FSK logic input Memory sequencing Sweep trigger
(32)	RS232	9-way RS-232 connector for remote control of the instrument. For contact allocation see Chap. 2.
(33)	IEEE 488.2	24-pin socket accepts the standard GPIB connector to allow remote control of the instrument. For contact allocation see Chap. 2.
(34)	RF OUTPUT (optional)	An Option 5 50 $\Omega$ N-type socket. When fitted, replaces the front panel RF OUTPUT socket.
(35)	Power supply	3-pin plug integral with fuse holder. Mates with AC supply lead socket.
(36)	DC supply fuse (optional)	When Option 2 fitted, fuses the DC input socket.
(37)	DC input (optional)	When Option 2 fitted, the socket allows operation from an external 11 to 32 V DC source. For contact polarity see Chap. 2.

Annex-C-4 46882-225U

## **Operation**

The following sections replace those with the same titles in Chapter 4 in the main body of the manual.

#### Pulse modulation selection

Pulse modulation may be selected in addition to any other normal modulation modes. The source is external only from the front panel PULSE INPUT socket. Selection may be made as follows:

(1) Select the *Util 22: Pulse Modulation* menu. This shows the currently selected modulation mode against *Mod Mode:* (see Fig. C-3).

```
    Util 22 --- Pulse Modulation
    Mod Mode: FM int
    Pulse Mod: 0 - Disable
    0: Disable 1: Enable Ext
```

Fig. C-3 Pulse modulation menu

- (2) Enter 1 on the key pad (no terminator is required) to *Enable* the external modulation. The display changes to show the current modulation plus *Pulse* (e.g. *Mod Mode: AM int + FM ext + Pulse*). Entering 0 will disable the modulation.
- (3) Press [MOD] to return to the main screen. Repeatedly press [Mod] until Pulse Mod is displayed together with EXT ON. Note that for pulse operation pressing [Source ON/OFF] has no effect on the instrument.

When ON the carrier is controlled by the logic level applied to the PULSE INPUT socket. A logical '1' (a voltage between 3.5 and 5 V) allows carrier output, a logical '0' (a voltage between 0 and 1.0 V) suppresses it. Turning pulse mod OFF effectively applies a logical '1' allowing carrier output.

#### Remote operation

The GPIB commands for pulse modulation PULSE:ON and PULSE:OFF are invalid , and PULSE? will always return PULSE:ON.

# **Brief technical description**

Block diagram Fig. C-4 replaces that given in Chapter 6 in the main body of the manual. This shows that for an instrument fitted with Option 11:

The front panel EXT MOD INPUT socket is replaced by the PULSE INPUT socket.

The front panel former LF OUTPUT socket performs the dual functions of MOD I/O.

The rear panel PULSE I/P socket is replaced by the 4FSK socket.

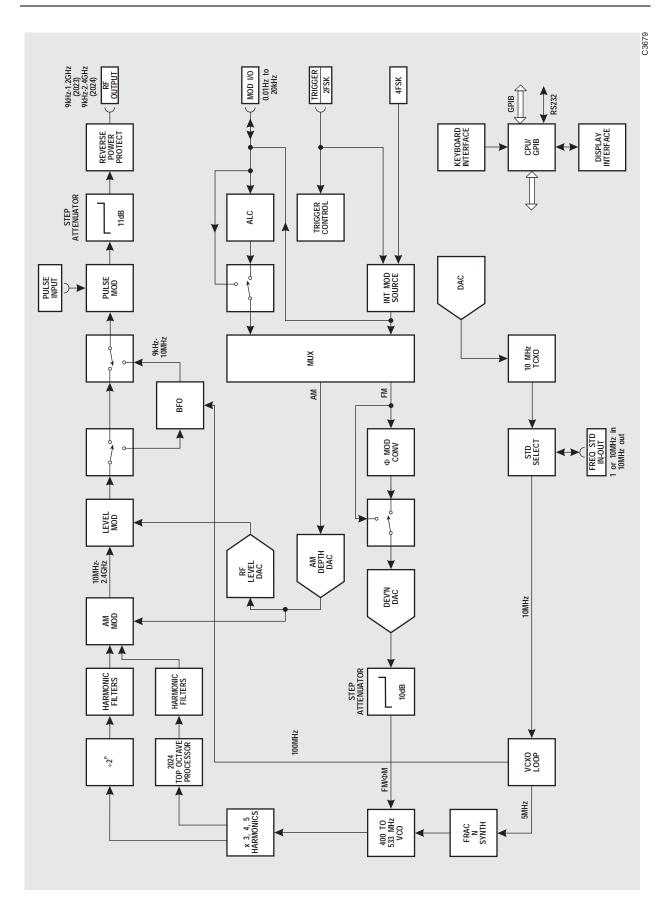


Fig. C-4 Block schematic diagram of instrument fitted with Option 11.

Annex-C-6 46882-225U

# **Acceptance testing**

The following acceptance tests supersede those given under 'RF output', 'Carrier harmonics' and 'Pulse modulation' in the main body of the manual.

# **RF** output

#### **Specification**

Level range: -140 dBm to +25 dBm (RF power above +19 dBm is uncalibrated for

carrier frequencies >1.2 GHz)

Accuracy: For output levels above -127 dBm and over a temperature range of

17°C to 27°C:

±1 dBm to 1.2 GHz ±2 dBm to 2.4 GHz (2024)

Temperature coefficient<±0.02 dB/°C to 1.2 GHz and <±0.04 dB/°C to

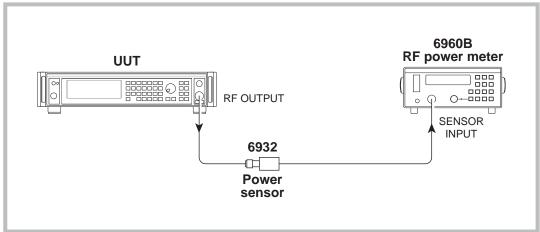
2.4 ĠHz

#### **Test equipment**

Description	Minimum specification	Example
Power meter	±0.1 dB from 10 kHz to 2.4 GHz	IFR 6960B and 6932
Measuring receiver	0 dBm to -127 dBm; 2.5 MHz to 2.4 GHz	HP 8902A with 11722A sensor and 11793A down converter
Signal generator	+8 dBm from 32.5 MHz to 2.43 GHz	IFR 2041

## RF level frequency response

# **Test procedure**



C2373

Fig. C-5 RF output test set-up

- (1) Perform AUTO ZERO and AUTO CAL on the power meter.
- (2) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. C-5.
- (3) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 30 [kHz] [RF LEVEL] 0 [dB]

- (4) Record the output level measured by the power meter against each of the carrier frequencies shown in Table C-1, checking that the results are within specification.
- (5) Set the UUT RF level to +7 dBm and repeat (4) using Table C-2.
- (6) Set the UUT RF level to +13 dBm and repeat (4) using Table C-3.
- (7) Set the UUT RF level to +25 dBm and repeat (4) using Table C-4, decreasing the RF level to +19 dBm when testing at carrier frequencies above 1.2 GHz.

#### **ALC linearity**

#### **Test procedure**

- (1) Perform AUTO ZERO and AUTO CAL on the power meter.
- (2) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. C-5.
- (3) On the UUT set:

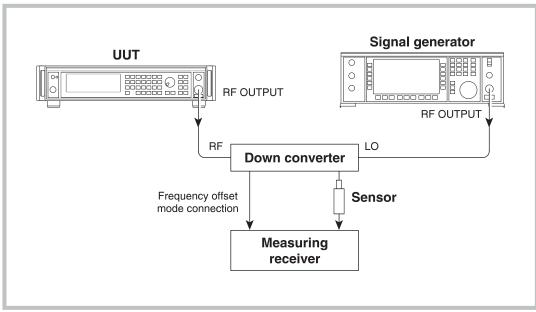
[CARR FREQ] 2.5 [MHz] [RF LEVEL] -4 [dB]

- (4) Record the output level measured by the power meter against each of the steps shown in Table C-5, checking that the results are within specification.
- (5) Set the UUT carrier frequency to 500 MHz and repeat (4) using Table C-6.
- (6) Set the UUT carrier frequency to 2400 MHz and repeat (4) using Table C-7.

#### **Attenuator accuracy**

The following test will confirm that the attenuator performs to the published performance specification. In the event of the receiver/down-converter not being available, an alternative method to functionally test the individual pads is also suggested. (See 'Alternative attenuator functional test' under 'ALC linearity' at the start of this Chapter).

#### **Test procedure**



C2849

Fig. C-6 RF output test set-up

(1) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. C-6.

Annex-C-8 46882-225U

(2) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 2.6 [MHz] [RF LEVEL] 0 [dB]

[SET  $\Delta$ ]

[RF LEVEL] (to select [Levl Step]) 11 [ENTER]

[RF LEVEL]

- (3) Tune the receiver to 2.6 MHz and record the output level measured in Table C-8, checking that the result is within specification.
- (4) Set the UUT RF level to -4.1 dBm. Measure the received level and record the result in Table C-8, checking that the result is within specification.
- (5) Decrement the UUT, using the [×10 ♣] key, in 11 dB steps down to an RF level of -103.1 dBm, measuring the received level at each step shown in Table C-8, checking that the results are within specification.
- (6) Set the UUT to carrier frequency 540 MHz and repeat (2) to (5) using Table C-9.
- (7) Set the UUT to carrier frequency 1140 MHz and repeat (2) to (5) using Table C-10.

Note

The following test frequencies are for 2024 only. The down converter will automatically be enabled when testing frequencies above 1300 MHz.

- (8) Set the local oscillator to +8 dBm at a carrier frequency of 62 MHz less than the test frequency (i.e. 1678 MHz).
- (9) On the receiver, enter the local oscillator frequency followed by the test frequency.
- (10) Set the UUT to carrier frequency 1740 MHz and repeat (2) to (5) using Table C-11.
- (11) Set the UUT to carrier frequency 2400 MHz and repeat (2) to (5) using Table C-12.

#### **Carrier harmonics**

#### **Specification**

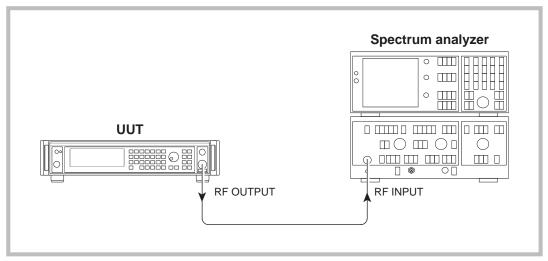
**Harmonics:** Typically better than -25 dBc for RF levels up to 6 dB below the

maximum specified output

#### **Test equipment**

Description	Minimum specification	Example
Spectrum analyzer	DC to 7.2 GHz frequency coverage	IFR 2390 or 2386

#### **Test procedure**



C2363

Fig. C-7 Carrier harmonics test set-up

- (1) Press CAL on the spectrum analyzer.
- (2) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. C-7.
- (3) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 10 [kHz] [RF LEVEL] +19 [dB]

(4) Measure the level of the second and third harmonics on the spectrum analyzer at each of the carrier frequencies shown in Table C-13, decreasing the RF output to +13 dBm for carrier frequencies above 1.2 GHz, checking that the results are within specification.

#### **Pulse modulation**

#### **Specification**

Carrier frequency range: 100 kHz to 2.4 GHz.

RF level range: Maximum guaranteed output is reduced to +22 dBm up to 1.2 GHz and

to +16 dBm above 1.2 GHz when pulse modulation is selected.

RF level accuracy: Additional temperature coefficient <±0.01 dB/°C when pulse

modulation selected.

On/off ratio: >80 dB below 1.2 GHz.

>70 dB below 2.1 GHz. >65 dB above 2.1 GHz.

Rise and fall time: Less than 20 ns.

Annex-C-10 46882-225U

#### **Test equipment**

Description	Minimum specification	Example
Power meter	±0.1 dB from 10 kHz to 2.4 GHz	IFR 6960B and 6912
Spectrum analyzer	Frequency coverage 100 kHz to 2.4 GHz	IFR 2392, 2383 or 2386
$50~\Omega$ load (termination)	1 W, 50 $\Omega$ nominal impedance, DC to 2.4 GHz	Lucas Weinschel M1404N
Oscilloscope	100 MHz bandwidth	Tektronix TAS 465
Function generator	DC to 10 kHz square wave	HP 3325B
RF detector	100 kHz to 2 GHz	HP 8471D

## Pulse modulation RF level frequency response

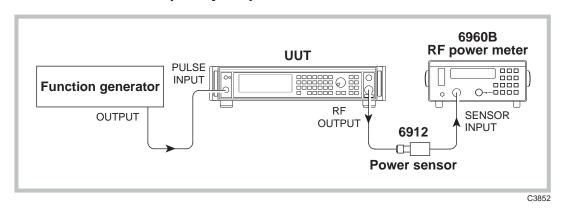


Fig. C-8 Pulse modulation test set-up

#### **Test procedure**

- (1) Perform AUTO ZERO and AUTO CAL on the power meter.
- (2) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. C-8.
- (3) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 100 [kHz] [RF LEVEL] -4 [dB] [MENU] 22 ENTER

The UUT will enter the 'Pulse Modulation' menu

Select '1' (To enable Pulse Mod.)

[MOD] then [MOD] then [MOD] again (To select Pulse Mod)

[SOURCE ON/OFF] (To enable modulation source)

[MOD ON/OFF] (To enable modulation)

- (4) Set the function generator to provide +5 V DC. The RF output will now be enabled.
- (5) Record the output level measured by the power meter against each of the carrier frequencies shown in Table C-14 checking that the results are within specification.
- (6) Set the UUT RF level to +7 dBm and repeat (5) using Table C-15.

#### Pulse modulation on/off ratio

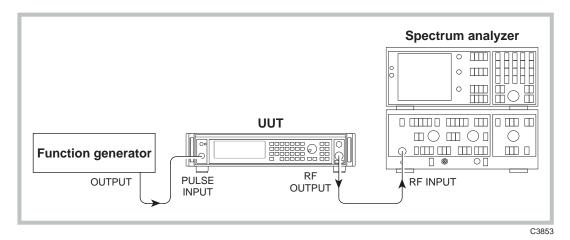


Fig. C-9 Pulse modulation on/off ratio test set-up

#### **Test procedure**

- (1) Press CAL on the spectrum analyzer.
- (2) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. C-9.
- (3) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 100 [kHz] [RF LEVEL] 0 [dB] [MENU] 22 ENTER

The UUT will enter the 'Pulse Modulation' menu

Select '1' (To enable Pulse Mod.)
[MOD] then [MOD] then [MOD] again (To select Pulse Mod)
[SOURCE ON/OFF] (To enable modulation source)
[MOD ON/OFF] (To enable modulation)

- (4) Set the function generator to provide +5 V DC. The RF output will now be enabled.
- (5) Tune the spectrum analyzer to the same frequency as the signal generator.
- (6) Press PEAK FIND on the spectrum analyzer and note the output level.
- (7) Apply a short circuit to the PULSE INPUT socket.
- (8) Again note the output level measured by the spectrum analyzer.
- (9) The difference between the levels recorded in (6) and (8) is the pulse mod on/off ratio. Check that the ratio is within specification using Table C-16.
- (10) Repeat (5) to (9) for each of the frequencies shown in Table C-16.

Annex-C-12 46882-225U

#### Pulse modulation rise and fall time

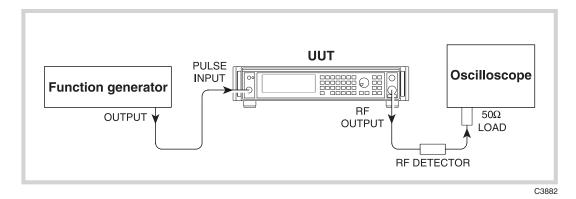


Fig. C-10 Pulse modulation rise and fall time test set-up

**Test procedure** 

(1) Connect the test equipment as shown in Fig. C-10.

(2) On the UUT set:

[CARR FREQ] 1 [GHz] [RF LEVEL] +7 [dB] [MENU] 22 ENTER

The UUT will enter the 'Pulse Modulation' menu

Select '1' (To enable Pulse Mod.)

[MOD] then [MOD] then [MOD] again (To select Pulse Mod)

[SOURCE ON/OFF] (To enable modulation source)

[MOD ON/OFF] (To enable modulation)

- (3) Set the function generator to produce 100 kHz, 0 V to +5 V square wave.
- (4) Adjust the oscilloscope controls such that the rise time of the envelope can be measured.
- (5) Measure the rise time between the 10% to 90% points checking that it is within the specification shown in Table C-17.
- (6) Repeat (4) to (5) for the fall time of the envelope.

# ACCEPTANCE TEST RESULTS TABLES OPTION 11

Table C-1 RF output at 0 dBm

Carrier frequency (MHz)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
0.03	-1		+1
0.33	-1		+1
60	-1	<del></del>	+1
180	-1		+1
300	-1		+1
420	-1		+1
540	-1		+1
660	-1		+1
780	-1		+1
900	-1		+1
1020	-1		+1
1140	-1		+1
1200	-1		+1
	2024	ONLY	
1201	-2		+2
1260	-2		+2
1380	-2		+2
1500	-2		+2
1620	-2		+2
1740	-2		+2
1860	-2		+2
1980	-2		+2
2220	-2		+2
2340	-2		+2
2400	-2		+2

Annex-C-14 46882-225U

Table C-2 RF output at +7 dBm

Carrier frequency (MHz)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
0.03	+6		+8
0.33	+6		+8
60	+6		+8
180	+6		+8
300	+6		+8
420	+6		+8
540	+6		+8
660	+6		+8
780	+6		+8
900	+6		+8
1020	+6		+8
1140	+6		+8
1200	+6		+8
	2024	ONLY	
1201	+5		+9
1260	+5		+9
1380	+5		+9
1500	+5		+9
1620	+5		+9
1740	+5		+9
1860	+5		+9
1980	+5		+9
2220	+5		+9
2340	+5		+9
2400	+5		+9

Table C-3 RF output at +13 dBm

Carrier frequency (MHz)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
0.03	+12		+14
0.33	+12		+14
60	+12		+14
180	+12		+14
300	+12		+14
420	+12		+14
540	+12		+14
660	+12		+14
780	+12		+14
900	+12		+14
1020	+12		+14
1140	+12		+14
1200	+12		+14
	2024	ONLY	
1201	+11		+15
1260	+11		+15
1380	+11		+15
1500	+11		+15
1620	+11		+15
1740	+11		+15
1860	+11		+15
1980	+11		+15
2220	+11		+15
2340	+11		+15
2400	+11		+15

Annex-C-16 46882-225U

Table C-4 RF output at +25 dBm

Carrier frequency (MHz)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
0.03	+24		+26
0.33	+24		+26
60	+24		+26
180	+24		+26
300	+24		+26
420	+24		+26
540	+24		+26
660	+24		+26
780	+24		+26
900	+24		+26
1020	+24		+26
1140	+24		+26
1200	+24		+26
	2024 ONL	/, +19 dВm	<u> </u>
1201	+17		+21
1260	+17		+21
1380	+17		+21
1500	+17		+21
1620	+17		+21
1740	+17		+21
1860	+17		+21
1980	+17		+21
2220	+17		+21
2340	+17		+21
2400	+17		+21

Table C-5 ALC linearity at 2.5 MHz

Table C-5 ALC linearity at 2.5 MHZ			
RF level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
-4	-5		-3
-3	-4	<del></del>	-2
-2	-3		-1
-1	-2		0
0	-1		+1
1	0		+2
2	+1	<del></del>	+3
3	+2		+4
4	+3		+5
5	+4		+6
6	+5		+7
7	+6		+8
8	+7		+9
9	+8		+10
10	+9		+11
11	+10		+12
12	+11		+13
12.1	+11.1		+13.1
12.2	+11.2		+13.2
12.3	+11.3		+13.3
12.4	+11.4		+13.4
12.5	+11.5		+13.5
12.6	+11.6		+13.6
12.7	+11.7		+13.7
12.8	+11.8		+13.8
12.9	+11.9		+13.9
13	+12		+14
14	+13		+15
15	+14		+16
16	+15		+17
17	+16		+18
18	+17		+19
19	+18		+20
20	+19		+21
21	+20		+22
22	+21		+23
23	+22		+24
24	+23		+25
25	+24		+26

Annex-C-18 46882-225U

Table C-6 ALC linearity at 500 MHz

RF level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
-4	-5		-3
-3	-4		-2
-2	-3		-1
-1	-2		0
0	-1		+1
1	0		+2
2	+1		+3
3	+2		+4
4	+3		+5
5	+4		+6
6	+5		+7
7	+6		+8
8	+7		+9
9	+8		+10
10	+9		+11
11	+10		+12
12	+11		+13
12.1	+11.1		+13.1
12.2	+11.2		+13.2
12.3	+11.3		+13.3
12.4	+11.4		+13.4
12.5	+11.5		+13.5
12.6	+11.6		+13.6
12.7	+11.7		+13.7
12.8	+11.8		+13.8
12.9	+11.9		+13.9
13	+12		+14
14	+13		+15
15	+14		+16
16	+15		+17
17	+16		+18
18	+17		+19
19	+18		+20
20	+19		+21
21	+20		+22
22	+21		+23
23	+22		+24
24	+23		+25
25	+24		+26

Table C-7 ALC linearity at 2400 MHz

## OPTION 11 FAST PULSE AND HIGH POWER

RF level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
-4	-6		-2
-3	-5		-1
-2	-4		0
-1	-3		+1
0	-2		+2
1	-1		+3
2	0		+4
3	+1		+5
4	+2		+6
5	+3		+7
6	+4		+8
7	+5		+9
8	+6		+10
9	+7		+11
10	+8		+12
11	+9		+13
12	+10		+14
12.1	+10.1		+14.1
12.2	+10.2		+14.2
12.3	+10.3		+14.3
12.4	+10.4		+14.4
12.5	+10.5		+14.5
12.6	+10.6		+14.6
12.7	+10.7		+14.7
12.8	+10.8		+14.8
12.9	+10.9		+14.9
13	+11		+15
14	+12		+16
15	+13		+17
16	+14		+18
17	+15		+19
18	+16		+20
19	+17		+21

Annex-C-20 46882-225U

Table C-8 Attenuator test at 2.6 MHz

RF level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
0	-1		+1
-4.1	-5.1		-3.1
-15.1	-16.1		-14.1
-26.1	-27.1		-25.1
-37.1	-38.1		-36.1
-48.1	-49.1		-47.1
-59.1	-60.1		-58.1
-70.1	-71.1		-69.1
-81.1	-82.1		-80.1
-92.1	-93.1		-91.1
-103.1	-104.1		-102.1

Table C-9 Attenuator test at 540 MHz

RF level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
0	-1		+1
-4.1	-5.1		-3.1
-15.1	-16.1		-14.1
-26.1	-27.1		-25.1
-37.1	-38.1		-36.1
-48.1	-49.1		-47.1
-59.1	-60.1		-58.1
-70.1	-71.1		-69.1
-81.1	-82.1		-80.1
-92.1	-93.1		-91.1
-103.1	-104.1		-102.1

Table C-10 Attenuator test at 1140 MHz

RF level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
0	-1		+1
-4.1	-5.1		-3.1
-15.1	-16.1		-14.1
-26.1	-27.1		-25.1
-37.1	-38.1		-36.1
-48.1	-49.1		-47.1
-59.1	-60.1		-58.1
-70.1	-71.1		-69.1
-81.1	-82.1		-80.1
-92.1	-93.1		-91.1
-103.1	-104.1		-102.1

Table C-11 Attenuator test at 1740 MHz (2024 only)

RF level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
0	-2		+2
-4.1	-6.1		-2.1
-15.1	-17.1		-13.1
-26.1	-28.1		-24.1
-37.1	-39.1		-35.1
-48.1	-50.1		-46.1
-59.1	-61.1		-57.1
-70.1	-72.1		-68.1
-81.1	-83.1		-79.1
-92.1	-94.1		-90.1
-103.1	-105.1		-101.1

Annex-C-22 46882-225U

Table C-12 Attenuator test at 2400 MHz (2024 only)

RF level (dBm)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
0	-2		+2
-4.1	-6.1		-2.1
-15.1	-17.1		-13.1
-26.1	-28.1		-24.1
-37.1	-39.1		-35.1
-48.1	-50.1		-46.1
-59.1	-61.1		-57.1
-70.1	-72.1		-68.1
-81.1	-83.1		-79.1
-92.1	-94.1		-90.1
-103.1	-105.1		-101.1

Table C-13 Carrier harmonic tests at +19 dBm

Carrier frequency (MHz)	2nd harmonic max. level (dBc)	Result (dBc)	3rd harmonic max. level (dBc)	Result (dBc)
0.01	-25		-25	
0.1	-25		-25	
1	-25		-25	
9.9	-25		-25	
10	-25		-25	
18.7	-25		-25	
18.8	-25		-25	
37.4	-25		-25	
37.6	-25		-25	
74.9	-25		-25	
75.1	-25		-25	
150	-25		-25	
151	-25		-25	
300	-25		-25	
301	-25		-25	
600	-25		-25	
601	-25		-25	
750	-25		-25	
950	-25		-25	
1200	-25		-25	
2024 ONLY (+13 dBm)				
1201	-25		-25	
1500	-25		-25	
1900	-25		-25	
2400	-25		-25	

Annex-C-24 46882-225U

Table C-14 Pulse mod. RF output at -4 dBm

Carrier frequency (MHz)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
30	-5.0		-3.0
60	-5.0		-3.0
180	-5.0		-3.0
300	-5.0		-3.0
420	-5.0		-3.0
540	-5.0		-3.0
660	-5.0		-3.0
780	-5.0		-3.0
900	-5.0		-3.0
1020	-5.0		-3.0
1140	-5.0		-3.0
1200	-5.0		-3.0
2024 ONLY			
1201	-6.0		-2.0
1260	-6.0		-2.0
1380	-6.0		-2.0
1500	-6.0		-2.0
1620	-6.0		-2.0
1740	-6.0		-2.0
1860	-6.0		-2.0
1980	-6.0		-2.0
2220	-6.0		-2.0
2340	-6.0		-2.0
2400	-6.0		-2.0

Table C-15 Pulse mod. RF output at +7 dBm

Carrier frequency (MHz)	RF level min. (dBm)	Result (dBm)	RF level max. (dBm)
30	+6.0	<del></del>	+8.0
60	+6.0		+8.0
180	+6.0		+8.0
300	+6.0		+8.0
420	+6.0		+8.0
540	+6.0		+8.0
660	+6.0		+8.0
780	+6.0		+8.0
900	+6.0		+8.0
1020	+6.0		+8.0
1140	+6.0		+8.0
1200	+6.0		+8.0
	2024	ONLY	
1201	+5.0		+9.0
1260	+5.0		+9.0
1380	+5.0		+9.0
1500	+5.0		+9.0
1620	+5.0		+9.0
1740	+5.0		+9.0
1860	+5.0		+9.0
1980	+5.0		+9.0
2220	+5.0		+9.0
2340	+5.0		+9.0
2400	+5.0		+9.0

Annex-C-26 46882-225U

Table C-16 Pulse modulation on/off ratio test

Carrier frequency (MHz)	Pulse mod. on/off ratio (dB)	Measured value (dB)
0.1	>80	
32	>80	
100	>80	
320	>80	
1000	>80	
1200	>80	
	2024 ONLY	
1500	>70	
1800	>70	
2100	>70	
2400	>65	

Table C-17 Pulse modulation rise and fall time test

		Result (ns)
Rise time Fall time	<20 ns <20 ns	

# AEROFLEX INTERNATIONAL LTD. SOFTWARE LICENCE AND WARRANTY

This document is an Agreement between the user of this Licensed Software, the Licensee, and Aeroflex International Limited, the Licensor. By opening this Software package or commencing to use the software you accept the terms of this Agreement. If you do not agree to the terms of this Agreement please return the Software package unopened to Aeroflex International Limited or do not use the software

#### 1. DEFINITIONS

The following expressions will have the meanings set out below for the purposes of this Agreement:

Add-In Application Software Licensed Software that may be loaded separately from time to time into the Equipment to

improve or modify its functionality

Computer Application Software Licensed Software supplied to run on a standard PC or workstation

Designated Equipment the single piece of Equipment upon which the licensed software is installed

Downloaded Software any software downloaded from an Aeroflex web site

Embedded Software Licensed Software that forms part of the Equipment supplied by Aeroflex and without which

the Equipment cannot function

Licence Fee the consideration ruling at the date of this Agreement for the use of one copy of the Licensed

Software on the Designated Equipment

Licensed Software All and any programs, listings, flow charts and instructions in whole or in part including Add-

in, Computer Application, Downloaded and Embedded Software supplied to work with

Designated Equipment

#### 2. LICENCE FEE

The Licensee shall pay the Licence Fee to Aeroflex in accordance with the terms of the contract between the Licensee and Aeroflex.

#### 3. TERM

This Agreement shall be effective from the date hereof and shall continue in force until terminated under the provisions of Clause 9.

#### 4. LICENCE

- 4.1 Unless and until terminated, this Licence confers upon the Licensee the non-transferable and non-exclusive right to use the Licensed Software on the Designated Equipment.
- 4.2 The Licensee may not use the Licensed Software on other than the Designated Equipment, unless written permission is first obtained from Aeroflex and until the appropriate additional Licensee Fee has been paid to Aeroflex.
- 4.3 The Licensee may not amend or alter the Licensed Software and shall have no right or licence other than that stipulated herein.
- 4.4 The Licensee may make not more than two copies of the Licensed Software (but not the Authoring and Language Manuals) in machine-readable form for operational security and shall ensure that all such copies include Aeroflex's copyright notice, together with any features which disclose the name of the Licensed Software and the Licensee. Furthermore, the Licensee shall not permit the Licensed Software or any part to be disclosed in any form to any third party and shall maintain the Licensed Software in secure premises to prevent any unauthorised disclosure. The Licensee shall notify Aeroflex immediately if the Licensee has knowledge that any unlicensed party possesses the Licensed Software. The Licensee's obligation to maintain confidentiality shall cease when the Licensed Software and all copies have been destroyed or returned. The copyright in the Licensed Software shall remain with Aeroflex. The Licensee will permit Aeroflex at all reasonable times to audit the use of the Licensed Software.
- 4.5 The Licensee will not disassemble or reverse engineer the Licensed Software, nor sub-licence, lease, rent or part with possession or otherwise transfer the whole or any part of the Licensed Software.

#### 5 WARRANTY

- 5.1 Aeroflex certifies that the Licensed Software supplied by Aeroflex will at the time of delivery function substantially in accordance with the applicable Software Product Descriptions, Data Sheets or Product Specifications published by Aeroflex.
- 5.2 The warranty period (unless an extended warranty for Embedded Software has been purchased) from date of delivery in respect of each type of Licensed Software is:

Embedded Software 12 months

Add-In Application Software 90 days

Computer Application Software 90 days

Downloaded Software No warranty

- 5.3 If during the appropriate Warranty Period the Licensed Software does not conform substantially to the Software Product Descriptions, Data Sheets or Product Specifications Aeroflex will provide:
  - 5.3.1 In the case of Embedded Software and at Aeroflex's discretion either a fix for the problem or an effective and efficient work-around.
  - 5.3.2 In the case of Add-In Application Software and Computer Application Software and at Aeroflex's discretion replacement of the software or a fix for the problem or an effective and efficient work-around.
- 5.4 Aeroflex does not warrant that the operation of any software will be uninterrupted or error free.

- 6 The above Warranty does not apply to:
- 6.1 Defects resulting from software not supplied by Aeroflex, from unauthorised modification or misuse or from operation outside of the specification.
- 6.2 Third party produced Proprietary Software which Aeroflex may deliver with its products, in such case the third party Software Licence Agreement including its warranty terms shall apply.
- 7 The remedies offered above are sole and exclusive remedies and to the extent permitted by applicable law are in lieu of any implied conditions, guarantees or warranties whatsoever and whether statutory or otherwise as to the software all of which are hereby expressly excluded.

#### 8. INDEMNITY

- 8.1 Aeroflex shall defend, at its expense, any action brought against the Licensee alleging that the Licensed Software infringes any patent, registered design, trademark or copyright, and shall pay all Licensor's costs and damages finally awarded up to an aggregate equivalent to the Licensee fee provided the Licensee shall not have done or permitted to be done anything which may have been or become any such infringement and shall have exercised reasonable care in protecting the same failing which the Licensee shall indemnify Aeroflex against all claims costs and damages incurred and that Aeroflex is given prompt written notice of such claim and given information, reasonable assistance and sole authority to defend or settle such claim on behalf of the Licensee. In the defence or settlement of any such claim, Aeroflex may obtain for the Licensee the right to continue using the Licensed Software or replace it or modify it so that it becomes non-infringing.
- 8.2 Aeroflex shall not be liable if the alleged infringement:
  - 8.2.1 is based upon the use of the Licensed Software in combination with other software not furnished by Aeroflex, or
  - 8.2.2 is based upon the use of the Licensed Software alone or in combination with other software in equipment not functionally identical to the Designated Equipment, or
  - 8.2.3 arises as a result of Aeroflex having followed a properly authorised design or instruction of the Licensee, or
  - 8.2.4 arises out of the use of the Licensed Software in a country other than the one disclosed to Aeroflex as the intended country of use of the Licensed Software at the commencement of this Agreement.
- 8.3 Aeroflex shall not be liable to the Licensee for any loss of use or for loss of profits or of contracts arising directly or indirectly out of any such infringement of patent, registered design, trademark or copyright.

#### 9. TERMINATION

- 9.1 Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, this Licence shall forthwith determine if the Licensee:
  - 9.1.1 As an individual has a Receiving Order made against him or is adjudicated bankrupt or compounds with creditors or as a corporate body, compounds with creditors or has a winding-up order made against it or
  - 9.1.2 Parts with possession of the Designated Equipment.
- 9.2 This Licensee may be terminated by notice in writing to the Licensee if the Licensee shall be in breach of any of its obligations hereunder and continue in such breach for a period of 21 days after notice thereof has been served on the Licensee.
- 9.3 On termination of this Agreement for any reason, Aeroflex may require the Licensee to return to Aeroflex all copies of the Licensed Software in the custody of the Licensee and the Licensee shall, at its own cost and expense, comply with such requirement within 14 days and shall, at the same time, certify to Aeroflex in writing that all copies of the Licensed Software in whatever form have been obliterated from the Designated Equipment.

#### 10. THIRD PARTY LICENCES

The software or part thereof may be the proprietary property of third party licensors. In such an event such third party licensors (as referenced on the package or the Order Acknowledgement) and/or Aeroflex may directly enforce the terms of this Agreement and may terminate the Agreement if the Licensee is in breach of the conditions contained herein.

#### 11. EXPORT REGULATIONS

The Licensee undertakes that where necessary the Licensee will conform with all relevant export regulations imposed by the Governments of the United Kingdom and/or the United State of America.

#### 12. NOTICES

Any notice to be given by the Licensee to Aeroflex shall be addressed to:

Aeroflex International Limited, Longacres House, Six Hills Way, Stevenage, SG1 2AN, UK.

#### 13. LAW AND JURISDICTION

This Agreement shall be governed by the laws of England and shall be subject to the exclusive jurisdiction of the English courts. This agreement constitutes the whole Contract between the parties and may be changed only by memorandum signed by both parties.

© AEROFLEX INTERNATIONAL LTD 2004



**CHINA Beijing** 

Tel: [+86] (10) 6539 1166 Fax: [+86] (10) 6539 1778

**CHINA Shanghai** 

Tel: [+86] (21) 5109 5128 Fax: [+86] (21) 5150 6112

**FINLAND** 

Tel: [+358] (9) 2709 5541 Fax: [+358] (9) 804 2441

**FRANCE** 

Tel: [+33] 1 60 79 96 00 Fax: [+33] 1 60 77 69 22

**GERMANY** 

Tel: [+49] 8131 2926-0 Fax: [+49] 8131 2926-130

**HONG KONG** 

Tel: [+852] 2832 7988 Fax: [+852] 2834 5364

**INDIA** 

Tel: [+91] 80 5115 4501 Fax: [+91] 80 5115 4502 **KOREA** 

Tel: [+82] (2) 3424 2719 Fax: [+82] (2) 3424 8620

**SCANDINAVIA** 

Tel: [+45] 9614 0045 Fax: [+45] 9614 0047

**SPAIN** 

Tel: [+34] (91) 640 11 34 Fax: [+34] (91) 640 06 40

**UK Burnham** 

Tel: [+44] (0) 1628 604455 Fax: [+44] (0) 1628 662017

**UK Stevenage** 

Tel: [+44] (0) 1438 742200 Fax: [+44] (0) 1438 727601 Freephone: 0800 282388

**USA** 

Tel: [+1] (316) 522 4981 Fax: [+1] (316) 522 1360 Toll Free: (800) 835 2352

As we are always seeking to improve our products, the information in this document gives only a general indication of the product capacity, performance and suitability, none of which shall form part of any contract.

We reserve the right to make design changes without notice.

web www.aeroflex.com

Email info-test@aeroflex.com

November 2005